



# ALIENS

IN THE BIBLE

*A biblical perspective of supernatural  
entities, realms of existence, and phenomenon*

**Author: John W. Milor**

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## PART I (INTRODUCTION)

### **CHAPTER 1: MY PERSONAL ENCOUNTER WITH THE UNKNOWN**

### **CHAPTER 2: MY PERSPECTIVE IN THIS BOOK**

### **CHAPTER 3: MY CALLING**

## PART II (ENTITIES)

### **CHAPTER 4: ANGELS, THE SONS OF GOD, AND THEIR OFFSPRING, THE NEPHILIM**

1. The astounding power of angels:
2. Confusion with classifying angels:
3. Are angels physical beings?
  - 3.1 The Sethite theory:
  - 3.2 The Sons of God – angels:
  - 3.3 The link between the flood, and Sodom and Gomorrah:
  - 3.4 Why Noah?
  - 3.5 Alien abductions in prophesy:
  - 3.6 Marriage and sex among angels:
  - 3.7 Why can angels sexually reproduce, but shouldn't? The Butterfly theory:
4. What kind of angel is Satan?
5. Satan's tactics:

### **CHAPTER 5: THE HOSTS OF HEAVEN, THE STARS, AND CREATURES**

1. Different types of angels:
2. The Hosts of Heaven:
3. Non-physical life forms that aren't angels:
4. Physical life-forms that aren't angels:
  - 4.1 The issue of technology - do God's faithful angels use technology?
  - 4.2 The issue of technology - do fallen angels use technology?
  - 4.3 Alien abductors – probably fallen angels:
5. The balance of technological and spiritual development:
6. Difficult to classify technology between entities:
7. God's intervention in the balance of technological and spiritual development:
8. The Stars:
  - 8.1 The Twelve Stars – Stars referring to people:
  - 8.2 Stars referring to the Hosts of Heaven:
  - 8.3 Stars referring specifically to angels:
9. Creatures in scripture:
10. Beasts in scripture:
11. Warnings in scripture – be prepared:

### **CHAPTER 6: MYTHICAL BEINGS, BEASTS, AND MONSTERS**

1. Examples of legends derived from fact:
2. Legends and idols - tools for demons:
3. Does scripture substantiate the existence of mythical beings?

## **CHAPTER 7: NON-PHYSICAL ENTITIES**

1. Do ghosts exist?
  - 1.1 Degrees of hell:
  - 1.2 Cursed ground: Is there a case of haunting in the Old Testament?
  - 1.3 Ceremonial cleanness:
  - 1.4 Ghosts in the New Testament:
  - 1.5 Warnings about the dead:
  - 1.6 My own experience with necromancy:
  - 1.7 Unintentional communication with the dead:
  - 1.8 Conclusion about ghosts:
2. Can animals be ghosts?
  - 2.1 Do all creatures of flesh and blood have spirits?
  - 2.2 Should animals be treated with care? If so, then why?
  - 2.3 Do animals have a basic sense of moral accountability? Can animals sin, and if so, what is their punishment?
  - 2.4 Do Animals have any salvation?
    - 2.4.1 The flood of Noah – a foreshadowing of the cross:
    - 2.4.2 Have unclean animals been spiritually cleaned?
    - 2.4.3 What happens to animals when they die?
  - 2.5 Conclusion of whether animals can become ghosts:
3. Demons, devils, and angels:
4. A Word about possession:
5. A Word about reincarnation:
6. A Word about astral projection:

## **CHAPTER 8: PSEUDO ENTITIES**

1. The rise of artificial intelligence:
- 1.2 The Cosmists vs. the Terrestrialists:
- 1.3 Artificial intelligence is inevitable:
- 1.4 The biblical relevance of artificial intelligence:
- 1.5 A pseudo Holy Spirit:
- 1.6 The Mark of the Beast:
- 1.7 Satan's counterfeit body:
- 1.8 Human pride:
2. Thought-forms:
  - 2.1 Blessings, curses, and covenants:
  - 2.2 Can Thought-forms assume a physical appearance?
    - 2.2.1 Bilocation:
    - 2.2.2 Group mind thought-forms:
      - 2.2.2.1 A word about prayer and faith:
    - 2.2.3 Is stigmata a type of thought-form?
    - 2.2.4 Thought-forms in legends and lore – archetypes:
    - 2.2.5 Thought-forms in Tibetan occultism:
    - 2.2.6 Scientific study of thought-forms:
  - 2.3 The danger of Dungeons & Dragons role playing games:
    - 2.3.1 Religion in D&D:
    - 2.3.2 Character alignments:
    - 2.3.3 A Game of the mind:
    - 2.3.4 Dungeons & Dragons thought-forms:
  - 2.4 Could Thought-forms be ghosts?
  - 2.5 The Thought-form / Piggy-back theory:

## **PART III (REALMS OF EXISTENCE)**

### **CHAPTER 9: THE HEAVENLY REALMS**

1. Understanding heaven:
  - 1.1 Forward:
  - 1.2 The three realms of heaven:
  - 1.3 The heavens are places:
  - 1.4 Heaven as a state of glory:
    - 1.4.1 Humanities journey through levels of glory:
    - 1.4.2 The earth's journey through levels of glory:
  - 1.5 Conclusion:
2. The Old Heaven and Earth - Satan's ancient kingdom?
  - 2.1 What does science have to tell us?
    - 2.1.1 Organic compounds found on asteroids:
    - 2.1.2 Micro-organisms are found on meteorites from Mars:
    - 2.1.3 The face, and pyramids found on Mars:
    - 2.1.4 The Martian cataclysm:
    - 2.1.5 The Exploding Planet Hypothesis:
  - 2.2 What does the Bible say about the Exploding Planet Hypothesis?
    - 2.2.1 Were there worlds with civilizations before Adam and Eve were created?
    - 2.2.2 A modern perspective of the big picture:

### **CHAPTER 10: THE REALMS OF HELL**

1. Understanding hell:
  - 1.1 Forward:
  - 1.2 Types of death:
  - 1.3 Death and hell:
  - 1.4 Hell became altered:
  - 1.5 Differences between hell (*Hades*) and the lake of fire:
  - 1.6 Degrees of hell:
  - 1.7 The regions of hell (*Hades*) – inner earth:
  - 1.8 The journey of a lost soul:
2. Propaganda City:

## **PART IV (PHENOMENON)**

### **CHAPTER 11: ASTRAL PROJECTION IN THE BIBLE**

1. Reaching to the heavens?
2. Literally reaching to the heavens - by spiritual means:
3. Demonic deception:
4. The implications of astral projection:
5. Why did God intervene at the Tower of Babel?
6. The link between sorcery and the Tower of Babel:
7. An enormous interest in the stars:
8. Meeting places of the *gods*:
  - 8.1 The Babylonian translation of the Tower of Babel – "*Gateway Of God*":
9. Is astral projection evil?
10. NDE's - a type of astral projection:
11. Possible dangers involved with astral projection:
12. Advice: What I would do if this happened to me!
13. Uncorrupted spiritual knowledge in the ancient east:
14. A return to ancient knowledge – how long will the veil be sustained:

### **CHAPTER 12: PSI IN THE BIBLE**

1. What does modern science say about PSI?
2. PSI – a non-human attribute:
3. PSI – can science help?
4. PSI – a human attribute - back before the fall:
5. PSI – conclusion:
  - 5.1 The hidden dangers of PSI:
  - 5.2 A unique ministry:

### **CHAPTER 13: REINCARNATION IN THE BIBLE**

1. Was John the Baptist Elijah reincarnated?
2. Modern day cases of reincarnation:
3. The demonic deceptions explanation of reincarnation:
4. The psychic phenomenon explanation of reincarnation:

### **CHAPTER 14: EVOLUTION IN THE BIBLE**

1. The purpose of this chapter:
2. Confusion in biology:
  - 2.1 Translation vs. Evolution:
  - 2.2 The curse of survival:
    - 2.2.1 God's provision for the curse of survival - physical changes:
    - 2.2.2 Changes in humanity:
3. Common design - efficient, and intimate:
  - 3.1 Intimacy:
  - 3.2 The unknown:
4. Genetic experimentation:
5. The great deception:

## **A LAST WORD (THE GRAND CONCLUSION)**

# PART I

## INTRODUCTION

---

This book is for individuals interested in topics of supernatural origin. It should appeal to both Christians, as well as readers of metaphysical, or otherwise classified *New Age* literature. While this material is about New Age subject matter, the topics discussed are described from a biblical perspective. Therefore, while this work would most likely find a more fitting home in the Christian section of a book store – because it's perspective is biblical, I would rather it be placed in the New Age section. The primary reason for this desire is because it's intended as a tool for opening the eyes of seekers – who often imbed themselves in New Age mysticism, not finding the answers to their questions concerning supernatural phenomenon within the context of a Christian paradigm.

Some Christians will find this work too open-minded. It contains some fairly controversial information, but none of which I hope would in any way, shape, or form, compromise essential principals of the Christian faith, such as the issue of salvation by any other means than Christ. I must admit that much of the information in this work can be accused of being unimportant – in other words, *a waste of time to investigate*. But if you're a Christian and you've picked up this book – and have read thus far – I'm certain that it's by no accident. Even if much of the information in this book is of secondary importance, it should prove to be enriching, providing answers to questions concerning metaphysical phenomenon, such as aliens, ghosts, and the like. Furthermore, this book serves as a warning of a deception looming on the horizon of humanity – you must read more to find out what this deception is.

I do firmly believe that if Christians simply do what Christians *should* do – that is, to seek first the kingdom of God (Matthew 6:33) – then they won't have anything to worry about concerning any future deception about to envelope the world. But who's to say what method God might use to reveal a particular deception to those who are diligently seeking His kingdom first, as they should? Perhaps His method might be this book...

Some New Agers will find this work too closed-minded. If you're of a New Age paradigm, you might react to the biblical perspective with scrutiny when you're confronted with it. Then again – you might very well be amazed at just exactly what *is* contained within the ancient Greek and Hebrew texts that compose the Bible. I used to be of the New Age persuasion – and in essence, I wrote this work for all of my former selves out in the world; seekers, looking for answers to tough questions. I must reiterate – to all New Age readers, if you've picked up this book and have read thus far, it's by no accident. Someone is trying to tell you something...

## CHAPTER 1: MY PERSONAL ENCOUNTER WITH THE UNKNOWN

It was in the summer of 1990, during the Panamanian conflict. I was an M-60 Machine Gunner in the Army at the time, assigned to the 7th Infantry Division.

My weary eyes gazed out into the midnight mists of a dark jungle. Breaking the silence was an irritating buzz in my ear; I swiped at the mosquito and missed it. The buzz reminded me of the unbearable itching on my arms, so I bathed them in another scratch-fest. The itching quickly turned into stinging, as the blood oozing from the innumerable insect bites on my arms mingled with my sweat.

The stinging soon grew intolerable, so I tried to think of something to do that would take my mind off of it. Reaching over to my pack, I pulled out an MRE (Meal-Ready-to-Eat). From the MRE, I retrieved two packets of powdered coffee, tore them open, then proceeded to dump the powder into my mouth. (This was a guard-duty technique I used quite frequently. I ate powdered coffee packets like most people use over-the-counter drugs to stay awake. I thought MRE coffee served this purpose better though, because the bitter taste alone was always enough to blast me awake for at least a solid five minutes. By the time the instant waking effect wore off, the jolt of caffeine would kick in.)

After the coffee, I ate a book of matches, because I heard that they would make me sweat sulfur, which most insects don't like. (Of course, the steroid pumping, power-lifting insects of Panama didn't care – for the most part.) But the side effect of eating matches also made my sweat stink with a profound unequalled intensity. In the Army though, nobody really cared. After a few weeks in the field, noses become immune to the ever-thickening, pasty cheese that coats a human body after X amount of days without a shower.

About the time I was finished gagging over the coffee and the matches, another mosquito buzzed my ear, and started the cycle over again; a cycle that was nearing two hours and approaching midnight. I gazed at my watch, seeing that I had fifteen minutes left before waking up Corp. Stenger to take over the shift.

Sleep at last, I thought, while peering at my sleeping area behind me. I was issued a small net to sleep under, but it didn't do any good. In the jungle of Panama, it's impossible to find an area without bugs. Setting up a net in any given space does nothing but trap bugs beneath it.

While staring at the net, I became aware of a peculiar glow that flashed in front of me while my head was turned. The glow was like a dim flash. It disappeared when I faced forward to see what it was.

All evening the sky had been flashing with lightning, even though there were no clouds or rain – just a gloomy haze. This is common in Panama. I quickly dismissed the phenomenon as lightning, because the effect of the mellow flash was very similar. The only reason this particular flash caught my attention is because it was noticeably brighter than the lightning that had been flashing throughout the evening. I simply attributed this to a brighter flash of lightning.

A few minutes passed, and the flash occurred again, this time while I was facing forward. It was immediately apparent that this flash was not lightning. It flashed from behind the many trees and brush in front of me about 300 yards away, and was much brighter this time.

I rubbed my eyes, repositioned myself, yawned, and leaned forward expecting another peculiar flash. Sure enough, about a minute later, another flash emitted from the jungle, and again, the intensity was increased. This was a prime indication that it was approaching my position.

I looked at Corp. Stenger and thought about waking him up. While staring at him, I recalled that I was in a highly unique situation for revenge. For the past year and a half, Corp. Stenger had led the pack of individuals that enjoyed making my life miserable in the Army. I developed a bad reputation of being a complete weirdo.

I sort of asked for it, because in the Army, anything that distinguishes a person as *different from others* is always a target for ridicule. All it took was for people to walk into my room. There, they found themselves in a shrine of the paranormal. Lining my walls were books on every paranormal subject there is. UFOs, ghosts, palmistry, astrology, Tarot cards, tea leaves, crystals, rune casting, miraculous healing, astral projection, Ouija boards, psychic phenomenon, hypnosis, reincarnation, possession, channeling, demons, angels, big-foot, different religions; if it had to do with the supernatural, I was the authority on it.

Decorating my room along with the books were items such as crystal balls, Dungeons & Dragons paraphernalia, (a game of which I was an avid player at that time), incense burners and a host of candles seated in the most cryptic looking candle holders I could find. For this reason, I was nick-named “Weird”, and the title never left me until I departed the Army.

So now here I was, faced with something that I had always longed to see... an unknown. And soundly sleeping to my right was Corp. Stenger, a man who loved to ridicule me endlessly about how stupid I was for believing in such “nonsense”. (For the sake of producing an unpoluted work, I will refrain from the exact terminology he used.)

I stood up, waiting for another flash. Another one came, brighter, and closer. I smiled with delight, strangely unafraid, and burning with curiosity. Two things came to my mind to explain the phenomenon: swamp gas, and ball lightning. (Recall that I am an authority on strange phenomenon, based on many hours of personal study.)

When I thought of ball lightning, I realized that I was probably not in a good situation. I was wearing a 23 pound chunk of metal, (my M-60 machine gun), about 100 rounds of ammunition draped around my neck, and a pair of night-vision goggles rested against my chest. Furthermore, my backpack had several lithium batteries in it, along with a field radio that had a three-foot antenna sticking out saying “Here I am, come and zap me!” Thinking that ball lightning would be attracted to these things, I set the M-60 down, took off the rounds of ammunition and set them next to the M-60, and distanced myself from the backpack a few feet.

Finally, I saw what was producing the flashing. It was a ball of light as bright as a camera flash, and about the size of a soccer ball. The ball was about twenty feet up in the air, would flash for about a half second, then disappear. While invisible, it would move about twenty to thirty feet closer to my position, then flash again. I was utterly fascinated!

My guard post was off the side of a small dirt road. This road meandered through the jungle behind Fort Sherman, Panama, and eventually dwindled into nothingness. There were two other guard posts along the road, each positioned about a quarter mile apart. I wondered if anyone at the other posts were able to see the flashing from where



they were. The brightness of this ball of light was certainly sufficient for them to see. “Witnesses” I thought to myself with delight. I figured that if others were faced with this phenomenon, then they would be forced to recant the burdensome reputation that they imparted me. (Unfortunately, this event actually ended up making things worse – *they mocked that I was the one responsible for it*).

I finally couldn’t wait anymore. This strange ball of light was clearly visible, flashing consistently every two to three minutes, and rapidly approaching my position. Every time it flashed, it was twenty to thirty feet closer to us. I had to wake Corp. Stenger. My shift was over, and it was time for him to get up anyway.

As he rubbed his dreary eyes, I excitedly explained to him that I thought there was some sort of alien probe, or alien life form approaching the camp. This quickly got his attention, but then he crunched his eyebrows, and mumbled a few curse words at me thinking I was making up a strange story. But while he was cursing, the light flashed, and I interrupted him saying, “See! Didn’t you see it! I know you saw it!”

A suspicious and confused expression donned on his face. “Well, my shift’s up, so have fun, because I’m crashing” I stated with an unconcerned attitude, hoping he would respond. I actually had no intention of going to sleep. I just wanted to make him squirm.

“Wait a minute. What was that?”

Before he was fully cognizant, I seized the moment to take charge. Corp. Stenger was on my turf now, and I was going to do my best to make him remember this moment for the rest of his life. I stepped out onto the side of the dirt road and began to talk to this ominous orb as it approached us. “Who are you? What are you? Reveal yourself to me...” I questioned it. By this time, it was flashing about ten feet in front of me, still close to twenty feet above the ground.

“Shut up!” Corp. Stenger quietly chastised me.

I then looked at him and with a serious expression and stated, “This ... whatever it is,” I pointed to where the ball of light flashed last, “is not of this world.” Silence permeated the atmosphere. The ball of light then flashed almost directly above me, as if in response to what I just said. Corp. Stenger and I both got a clear look at it this time. I also realized that this ball of light was no longer moving. It flashed about three times, remaining stationary, as if observing us. I pointed this out to Corp. Stenger, and he didn’t know what to say.

“Maybe it’s some sort of bug...” he mumbled.

“Don’t be an idiot!” I was now chastising *him*. “It’s the size of a soccer ball! You saw it!”

Corp. Stenger scratched his head. “Maybe it’s some sort of experimental technology they’re deploying from one of the aircraft-carriers in the gulf?” he quizzed, wondering now what my response would be. “Maybe some sort of laser?”

I was still wearing my AN/PVS-7s, (night-vision goggles), so I turned them on, and looked up to where I saw the ball of light flash last. I could see nothing. I lowered the goggles and stared at Corp. Stenger. “We have nothing that could do this. A laser shoots a strait beam of light, and needs an uninterrupted space in which to project. This thing is down in the trees, traveling around like a small probe, and is a ball of light. This is definitely not a laser, and it doesn’t appear to be physical either, because I can’t see it with the goggles, and it’s making absolutely no sound whatsoever.” I then handed the

goggles to Corp. Stenger and demanded that he try to see it for himself. He looked, and could see nothing.

While he was looking, I continued to lecture him. "It's not ball lightning either, because ball lightning doesn't flash like that. I read about ball lightning, which looks sort of like this, but when ball lightning appears, it zips around wildly until it's gone. It usually dissipates into something that attracts lightning, such as metal objects. Here is a bunch of metal, a field radio with an antenna that is nothing short of a lightning rod, and some batteries", I pointed to the M-60 and the backpack with the radio in it, "and that ball of light isn't going for it. It's just sitting up there, checking us out. Ball lightning doesn't do that! Ball lightning doesn't move through the jungle, then stop over the middle of a road and check people out! This thing appears to be resembling some sort of intelligence!"

By this time, Corp. Stenger was sweating profusely, scanning nervously with the goggles, and growing with paranoia. I was loving it!

"And it's not swamp gas either, because swamp gas is just a glowing greenish mist, not a ball of light as bright as a camera flash. Stenger, we are faced with an intelligent life form probably from another world" I stated with confidence, and awe. He looked at me with fear in his eyes, and I smiled back with delight. The light flashed again, as if responding to my statements again.

"Here, let me see those goggles," I asked in a calm, collected tone of voice. He handed them to me, and I proceeded to walk out into the very center of the road. "I'm going to try to communicate with it," I said to Corp. Stenger.

"Are you crazy? We don't know what that is!"

"If it wanted to harm us, I'm sure it could've done so by now."

Corp. Stenger refrained from speaking any further, and took a few steps backward off the road. He didn't want to be a part of what I was going to attempt to do. I really didn't know what I was going to do, but I thought it would sound good to say such a cryptic statement. I felt like I was in an episode of Star Trek.

While lifting the goggles to my eyes, I looked up to where the light flashed last. I then cleared my mind, and tried to feel where it was going to flash next. Oddly enough, a strange sensation overcame me. I actually felt that the object was moving. "I can feel it moving" I stated to Corp. Stenger. I felt the object fly right over my head, lower to about fifteen feet off the ground, and stop about twenty feet behind me. I followed it with the night vision goggles, spinning myself around in the opposite direction I was facing before, keeping my goggles pointed at where I thought I felt its presence. I then began to speak slowly. "The next time it will flash, it's going to be right...about...", then WHAM! The light flashed exactly where I was looking with the night vision goggles. I was blinded for about a full minute, because the goggles amplify all light, and the flash was as bright as a camera flash. I was astounded!

"Wow! Did you see that Stenger!" I excitedly pronounced, blind, and amazed. "I communicated with it! It showed me where it was going to flash next! There's no way I could've known that! This thing is intelligent. It stayed in that one spot until I wanted to communicate with it. Then it moved way over there," I pointed where it flashed, "and made me feel where it was going! I actually *felt* its presence! And right when I was about ready to say 'THERE', it flashed, as if it even knows what I'm saying!" Corp. Stenger stood motionless, staring at me. He didn't seem to share my enthusiasm.

I continued talking to this strange ball of light, but nothing more came of it. It didn't do anything particularly spectacular, like turn into a humanoid or anything. It simply demonstrated to me that without a doubt, it was in fact intelligent, and it was in fact checking us out. It proceeded to circle our post in a complete 360 degree circle, taking about fifteen minutes to do so. Then it slowly meandered down the road, flashing periodically as it went.

The next day I reminded Corp. Stenger of the event, and he simply looked at me and chuckled. "Hanging around you long enough, something weird was bound to happen," he joked.

I asked members of the other posts if they saw anything, and one member from both posts did. They said it stopped and flashed above the road at each post, as if taking note of their presence. I told them the whole story, and they got a kick out of it. But unfortunately, the event subsided into a vague recollection, and prompting the event in conversation did nothing for me but ask for ridicule. As stated earlier, they mocked that I was the reason for this strange event.

In my opinion, these individuals were faced with something utterly astonishing, and their complacent attitude towards it astounds me almost more than the ball of light itself.

This event stands clear in my memory as if it happened yesterday. I was not alone when this happened. I was fully alert, and completely sober. My prior interest in the paranormal was thus intensified by this event, and I can now speak from personal experience that I know that there are things in this world that contemporary science has yet to explain. At that time, I didn't think the Bible had any explanation for these things either. I was wrong.

## CHAPTER 2: MY PERSPECTIVE IN THIS BOOK

While some may consider this chapter's relevance to this book debatable, I find it necessary in order to establish my Christian perspective on paranormal issues.

As mentioned in the previous chapter, I was once heavily involved in occult related activities. I learned how to read palms, cast runes, perform Tarot card readings, and contact spirits through the use of a Ouija board – (though the later was quickly discarded because I discovered I could only contact demonic entities that tried to mimic human personas. In depth questioning always revealed their true nature, because they invariably ended up cursing me and spouting out satanic phrases. Even at that time I had no interest in having conversations with satanic beings.)

Other things I experimented with were performing self-hypnosis to extract memories from past lives, astral projection, and channeling spirit guides – (demons really), among other things. For the most part, these activities led me to either very unpleasant experiences, or no results at all.

As a Christian now, I realize what all this was about. I was searching. At that time in my life, I figured I already heard all there was to hear about Christianity, and to be honest, it bored me. I sought out something powerful, and spiritual, and didn't believe I could find it in Christianity. I had questions that weren't being answered. The Christians I knew never seemed to be interested in discussing things of a paranormal nature, because all the Christians I knew and listened to basically labeled all of these activities demonic. I always thought there was more to these things; they fascinated me. Labeling them demonic and refusing to investigate them any further was, in my opinion, narrow minded and opinionated. Since my experience with God when I was 21 years old, I've read the Bible for myself, and have discovered that everything I have ever wanted to know is contained within it. This leads me to the conclusion that my previous assumption that Christianity was a narrow minded and opinionated perspective of reality was in itself narrow minded and opinionated. I should not have judged Christianity according to the few Christians I knew. I should've researched the Bible for myself, and made my own conclusions about what I read.

I became a true Christian at the age of 21, though I always considered myself one. I suppose one could argue that I was a Christian ever since I accepted Jesus into my heart and asked Him to save me – which occurred so long ago I can't remember. But the meaning of salvation didn't truly set into my heart until I was 21 years old. Before my encounter with Jesus at 21 years old, *(a dream so powerful that I woke up a completely different person the next day – and have stayed that different person ever since)*, it meant that when I would die, I would go to heaven. Other than that, I didn't really give Christianity much further thought. Instead, I searched for God in metaphysical activities.

Now, I'm always thinking about God. I take God seriously. My interest in the things of God has greatly increased, and my faith has increased, and expanded into many areas of my life, morally, philosophically, spiritually, and conceptually. These changes are a result of the Holy Spirit dwelling within me, and affirming to me that the Holy Bible is the inspired word of God. Reading the Bible, I have learned many things:

### **Morals**

1. Evolution is a false doctrine (Genesis chapters 1 and 2), abortion is wrong

(Isaiah 49:5, Jeremiah 1:5), homosexuality is not an acceptable alternative life-style (Romans 1:26-32, Leviticus 20:13), sexual relations outside the confines of marriage is not okay if the two people love each other (Acts 15:20, 15:29, 21:25, Romans 1:29, 1 Corinthians 6:13, 1 Corinthians 6:18, Galatians 5:18, Ephesians 5:3, etc.), and the list goes on. Many of the aspects of my value system – items just listed, among others – which I inherited from my parents, immediate family, public education, the media, and the world in general, were radically changed. I attribute this change to scripture, and the Holy Spirit dwelling within me revealing His truth.

### **Philosophically**

2. Love is much more an action than it is an emotion (1 Corinthians chapter 13).

### **Spiritually**

3. Tithing in church is not giving to the church, the church staff, or the members of that church. Rather, it is giving to God. As for what the church does with the money from that point on, the church is accountable to God alone, so I really don't have to worry about it (Malachi 3:7-12). For those that are Christians, I'm sure you understand all this. For those that aren't Christians, you may have just read something to scoff at. The difference between Christians and non-Christians here is the element of spiritual discernment, which the Holy Spirit provides.

### **Conceptually**

4. Concerning my perspective on the many paranormal phenomenon I knew of, I now have a new light in which to view all things – the light of truth. The Bible is now my reference guide for my knowledge base.

With the Holy Spirit living within me, I now read scripture, and research things of the paranormal with a new understanding. The Bible is now my authority on all the things I read. If something purports knowledge contrary to the Bible, it is a lie, (or at least the explanation used to interpret such knowledge. Sometimes phenomenon is really occurring which is undeniable; it's the interpretation of the phenomenon that is often the lie. For example, if a man is missing \$20.00 from his wallet, he may interpret this to mean that a particular person stole this money, when in reality, he lost it. The fact that \$20.00 is missing is still true though.)

If something I read doesn't necessarily contradict scripture, it is a candidate for further investigation. This is the perspective on which this book is based.

With a Christian perspective, I will tackle the issues of reincarnation, PSI, astral projection, astrology, evolution, the existence of alien beings, ghosts, mythical beasts, thought-forms, and even artificial intelligence – which some may not classify as paranormal, but I do.

While most of the New Age occult related activities I used to be involved in were riddled with demonic influences, I believe the Lord protected me during this time in my life, and has used these prior mistakes of mine for good. Now that I belong to Christ, I have a dual perspective on metaphysical issues and activities. What better of a person could explain the intricate details of paranormal issues and activities other than a person who was once heavily affiliated with them. I can, after all, relate to someone in the New Age movement probably better than the average Christian, because I not only know what the Bible's perspective is on paranormal issues, I also know the New Age perspective.

(By the way, I refer to the New Age as a loose conglomeration of people highly associated with metaphysical beliefs and activities.)

One awesome aspect about God is that He often uses people's mistakes, working them toward good. This by no means justifies the mistakes of humanity; rather, it amplifies the amazing nature of God. For instance, God chose the apostle Paul as one of His disciples; someone that was once an enemy of Christians. The Scribes and Pharisees knew that the apostle Paul used to be part of their paradigm, and something powerful had to happen to him in order to change him so radically. He used to be one who diligently persecuted Christians, and something happened to him that miraculously changed him into a man willing to die for Christ's sake. This sent a powerful message to the Scribes and Pharisees, because they knew there was nothing they could say to him that he wasn't already fully aware of. Instead, it was evident that he was in possession of something greater than what they had.

My position is the same. When I'm witnessing to someone involved in the New Age movement, I always encounter people that remind me of my former self. They can't tell me anything to convince me away from Christianity, because I used to be where they are. I know about the things they have to say, and I can tell them that. But they usually can't tell me that they used to be Christians, and have left Christianity to follow some occult belief system. Those that do say they either are Christians, or that they used to be, usually don't have the first clue as to what it entails. Again, they are like the way I used to be. One of the keys demonstrating whether their faith in Christ is, or was genuine, is whether or not they ever read the Bible, and sought out its meaning. For some odd reason, people often claim faith in religions that they know nothing about. I once did.

In closing this chapter, I will state that I feel that the Lord has prepared me for the unique service of writing this book, and that Acts 2:18-36 may bear some relevance in my life.

#### Acts 2:18-36

*<sup>17</sup>And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, **and your young men shall see visions**, and your old men shall dream dreams: <sup>18</sup>And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy: <sup>19</sup>And I will shew wonders in heaven above, and signs in the earth beneath; blood, and fire, and vapour of smoke: <sup>20</sup>The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before that great and notable day of the Lord come: <sup>21</sup>And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.*

### CHAPTER 3: MY CALLING

Of all of the different topics discussed in this book, the topic of aliens is the most comprehensive, because of the depth and complexity of the questions that must be answered concerning what aliens are. Finding information to prove the existence of UFOs and aliens isn't difficult. There is by far no shortage of information. While a great deal of the information about the existence aliens and UFOs is often easy to discredit and unreliable, because much of it is based on blurry photographs and information retrieved from sessions of hypnotherapy, there is a large amount of it that is difficult to refute. How, for example, were Betty and Barney Hill, victims of one of the most famous alien abductions cases in history, able to produce star charts from memory they claimed to see posted on the walls inside of a space craft? These charts were not only highly accurate, but based on a galactic perspective other than earth, and contained stars that weren't discovered until several years later.<sup>1</sup> This type of information, combined with the sheer volume and history of information, not to mention the vast number of credible witnesses, is more than enough to convince me that the alien phenomenon is a very real phenomenon.

The question remains; how do Christians interpret this information? Is it found within the pages of the Bible? I think the answer to this question is "Yes". Unraveling the clues leading to this answer is done by exploring two themes in scripture: realms of existence, and the entities that exist in those realms.

The realms of existence that need to be discussed include: "Hell", "Hades", "Sheole", "Gehenna", "Tartarus", "The Chasm", "Paradise", "Abraham's Bosom", "Heaven", "The Heavens", "Heaven of Heavens", and "1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup>, and 3<sup>rd</sup> Heavens". The entities that will be identified are: "Angels", "Fallen Angels", "Demons", "Hosts of Heaven", "Stars", "Creatures", "Sons of God", and the "Nephilim", also known as "Rapha", or "Rephaim", all three of which refer to *giants*. These terms I've just mentioned are biblical terms, and they will be defined in a modern perspective.

In order to define what aliens are, using a Christian perspective, evidence should rely on scriptural references. Using scriptural references, a number of questions relating to the above named entities must be answered, in order to compare and contrast their definitions to what modern culture defines aliens as being. These questions are varied. For instance, what are these entities made of? If they are physical beings, can they physically die? Were they all hand crafted, each a unique species in its own right, or were they created like humans and animals, after *their kind*, designed to reproduce? If they were designed to reproduce, then how? Are they male, female, hermaphrodite, or something else entirely different? If you haven't discovered by now, the answers to many of these questions could be mind boggling, and lead to a great deal of confusion. This is why the concept of the existence of aliens in outer space could very well have a damaging effect on the Christian paradigm. These questions should be addressed.

Many theologians and philosophers throughout history have proposed their own theories about angels, as well as some of the other entities I previously mentioned, but for the most part, these theories are not derived from the Bible. Epics poems, such as Dante's "The Divine Comic", Milton's "Paradise Lost", and mystic works, such as Swedenborg's "Angelic Wisdom: Concerning Divine Love and Wisdom", were derived using a *mixture* of Islamic, Muslim, Jewish, and Christian writings, not to mention a little

of their own imaginative flare.<sup>2</sup> My work on the study of angels is different than theirs. Without researching any Gnostic gospels, cryptic Apocrypha, or spanning the scope of other religions, I will highlight information that the standard Holy Bible has on these entities. With this information, I should be able to provide sufficient evidence to prove that some of the descriptions of these entities may fit the definition of what modern society calls aliens.

#### The history of my calling to this subject:

I came to the conclusion several years ago that some of the non-human entities I previously mentioned, and the modern concept of aliens, were the same entities. As my knowledge in the field of computers grew, I learned how to create web pages, and found that there were free web space providers on the Internet. Knowing this, I thought it would be a great idea to put my theory about the existence aliens down on paper – or electronic media if you will – and post this research on the Internet. After all, the web presence was free, and my research would be made available for the entire world to see. All I had to do was present my ideas in a clear, presentable format.

I have always been compelled to let people know about all these things I have to say regarding aliens, and what I believe is an up and coming deception the likes of which the world has never seen. I completed this project in the winter of 1996, and experienced a sense of fulfillment, that what I did was according to a calling that God has given me.

Shortly after completing my work, I began to look for web sites on the Internet that were somewhat related to mine, and request links from these sites to my own. (This is a common advertising tactic for new web sites, for those individuals like myself that need the help of established web sites in order to announce our presence to cyberspace.) Shortly after I began my search, I stumbled upon Watchers web site,<sup>3</sup> and my jaw fell to the floor. Up until this time, I thought I was the only odd-ball Christian in the world that made the connection that aliens and angels, (among other entities listed in scripture), were the same entities, and could prove so using only the standard scripture of the Holy Bible. Needless to say, I was wrong. As I browsed through the various links on Watchers web site, I read a great deal of information that looked like my own material! Before requesting a link from Watchers, I thought at first that they might think I was a plagiarist, but I didn't care, because all of the information in my web site was in fact derived uniquely from my own rigorous research of the Bible.

Further analysis of the web sites on Watchers gave me the realization that it was obvious that my research was done solo, because I used many different verses that weren't used by others, and had my own unique perspective. I sort of had the steam taken out of me though, because I thought I was on the forefront with my radical theories.

Strangely enough, at about the same time I stumbled onto the Watchers web site, I heard a radio show called the *John Ankerberg show*, on a Christian radio station I frequently listen to. Author Chuck Missler was the guest on the program. He also believes as I do, that the "Sons of God" mentioned in Genesis 6, which mated with the daughters of men and bore the offspring of giants, were what our culture would term aliens.

Since I heard that program, I purchased Chuck Missler's tape series, "Return of the Nephilim",<sup>4</sup> and again, found a great deal of information that looked like my own material, and conclusions. (Reading Chuck's tape series research notes for the first time



was a strange experience. It was like reading something I would've written a few years in the future – the same ideas with different research material to support them.) Since this tape series has been out, Chuck Missler has produced with another author, Mark Eastman, a book titled *Alien Encounters*, on the same topic. Much of their information and conclusions are found in this book, but I do have my own unique perspective, so if you're already familiar with Mark Eastman and Chuck Missler's work, please don't think I'm a carbon copy. (Besides, aliens cover only part of this book.)

Chuck Missler, Mark Eastman, and I, are like minded individuals, (though I consider myself not near their scholarly caliber. Chuck, for instance, is the former CEO of a large telecommunications company, used to be contracted by the Department of Defense, speaks regularly on a radio talk show, is author of several books, etc., etc., etc.) I may lack audacious credentials, (a paltry BS. in Business Information Systems, the occupation of computer security manager, self-proclaimed UFOlogist – is there any other kind?), but I do feel that my research is a service to God, and I have been given a vision of truth I am compelled shout out to the world. With this in mind, my most outstanding credential is that I'm "Christian", which puts me on equal ground with Chuck Missler, and Mark Eastman, among others.

After Watchers was kind enough to link my web site to theirs, (and even feature it as a special attraction a few times), I began receiving emails from people all over the world. The emails I've been receiving have made me ecstatic! The world, I have discovered, is filled with Christians that want a *Christian based* answer to the *alien* question. In addition, some of these emails I've received are from the victims of alien abductions, and their hair-raising stories have so far confirmed to me the accuracy of the findings in my research.

I always reply to all of my emails, and over the last year, I've been posing the question to my readers, "Do you think I should make my research on aliens into a book?" I have received nothing but a unanimous, resounding "YES!" Fueled with the motivation given to me from email, and still the burning call I feel the Lord placing on my heart, I have decided to expand my research on my theories about the existence of aliens into this book.

Once I began to write this book, I became aware of the fact that I have a number of theories on quite a few topics not normally associated with the Christian paradigm. The subject of aliens I feel is one of the most important issues discussed in this book, primarily because of its prophetic significance, but I have decided to expand my research to include all of the various topics listed in this book. I thought this would be a great idea for three reasons: 1. Provide more flavor and attract a wider range of readers, 2. Offering the Christian perspective on anything aids in the distribution of scriptural knowledge, which is a very good thing, and last of all, 3. I wanted to make the book larger because the single topic of aliens wouldn't be a very large book. Heh heh... ;-)

So now – please read on!

## References

1 Jenny Randals, *The UFO Conspiracy: The First Forty Years*, Blandford press, Artillery House, Artillery Row, London, 1990.

2 Sophy Burnham, *A Book on Angels*, Ballantine Books, New York, NY., 1990, pages 133-192.

3 <http://www.mt.net/~watcher/>, *UFOs, Aliens & Antichrist: The Angelic Conspiracy & End Times Deception*, 1999. (Note: Watcher's group is currently trying to get the domain [www.Watchers.org](http://www.Watchers.org), so look for it!)

4 (Tape Series: 2 tape set) Chuck Missler, *Return of the Nephilim*, 1997.

# PART II

## ENTRIES

---

The concept of alien visitors from other worlds is an important issue in these times, because the notion that there exists life on other planets will confront many fundamental Christian beliefs. In the event that the existence of alien life becomes fact, new evidence will prompt questions as to the origin of life. Judging from the modern sociological perspective on the theories of origin, orthodox Christianity will suffer a tremendous dilemma. (Consider the dilemma it already faces with the false doctrine of evolution!)

The kinds of views that will be presented to humanity during a time of open contact with aliens – are already surfacing. Francis Crick and James Watson, for example, the Nobel Prize winners for Physiology and Medicine, are famous for discovering the master molecule that contains the genetic code, (DNA). In the late 1980's, Crick has been noted as "...boldly suggesting that the seeds of life on earth may have been sent here in a rocket launched from some faraway planet by *creatures like ourselves*."<sup>1</sup>

Most assuredly this theory will resurface with intensified vigor, when it is accompanied with some falsified evidence supplied by certain entities who will probably attempt to claim that illustrious title – our *creators*, (small "c"!) )

The information contained in this book about aliens visiting the earth in the past, and especially in the end times, (*now*), is information I believe is contained within key passages of scripture in the Bible. I firmly believe the Holy Spirit has illuminated these passages of scripture to me, and has given me sufficient knowledge to interpret them.

The Bible has a great deal to say about aliens. It speaks of their existence in many verses, and specifically mentions their, (for the most part – those that *we* encounter), alliance with Satan. It is my intention to clarify some of these scriptures so that this up and coming deception will be forewarned.

It should be noted that frequently found throughout this book is the word *possibility*. When I spot something in scripture that *looks* like evidence in support of a particular theory, I emphasize that some of the particular interpretations of scripture I make should only be construed as possibilities. I do this for two reasons: 1. Many of the theories I suggest are just that – *theories*. Most of the theories in this book can't be proved (*as far as I know*) – but if further information is uncovered in the future that may provide additional evidence in support of them, then they will certainly be strengthened. 2. I think it's a good idea to have a large collection of possibilities open, so that if something happens in the future of world events that may come as a shock to the Christian community, (*namely – alien contact*), these possibilities will be made available. For example, relevant to this book, if alien life presents itself to the world, and it is proven that there is other life in outer space without a shadow of a doubt, scriptural

research into this *possibility* would serve a valuable purpose. It would ground Christians with the knowledge that simply because there exists life on other planets doesn't mean that the Christian paradigm is false. As I have previously noted, according to much of my research, the existence of aliens in outer space doesn't refute scripture at all. In fact, scripture seems to indicate that there is, in fact, life in outer space.

The terms "Angels", "Fallen Angels", "Demons", "Hosts of Heaven", "Stars", "Creatures", "Sons of God", and the "Nephilim", also known as "Rapha", or "Rephaim", all three of which refer to *giants*,<sup>2</sup> all must be defined. Within these terms lies the key to unlocking the mystery of what modern society calls aliens.

To begin with, I will define the most confusing and liberally applied term of all, angels.

Can angels and aliens be the same entities? Concerning their differences, most people make two assumptions:

1. Many people think that angels are purely spiritual beings, and can't assume physical form. This concept is derived from ancient legends, scriptures, and pictures of angels as being glorified and holy, glowing with the power of God, and wearing brilliantly illuminating white robes. People don't think of angels as *needing* technology, because they have innate power, and are capable of going anywhere, and doing anything they so desire, simply by the sheer power of their will. In most respects, they are thought of as messengers and guardians; protectors of humanity assigned by God Himself to help us.

Aliens, on the contrary, are usually depicted as physical beings like humans. They depend on their highly advanced technology, which aids them in all of their activities. Aliens aren't typically thought of as divine helpers on missions assigned by God, but rather, scientists from other worlds. They are keenly intelligent, perhaps much more so than humans judging by the accounts of the sophistication of their technology. At best, they are thought of as helpers, though their methods are chaotic and uncaring on the micro level. Some people think they are simply curious about humans, just as humans are curious about them. Other people, especially those who've experience alien abductions, think they are utterly terrifying, and downright evil in their abusive treatment of humans.

2. Most people believe that angels are in heaven, and demons, or fallen angels, are trapped in hell. Aliens, on the other hand, if they exist, are free to roam about in outer space. The confusion here comes from the fact that people generally define heaven and hell as spiritual places beyond our reality, while outer space is within our reality.

While the next part of this book deals with the later assumption, this part of this book is titled "Entities", and deals with the first assumption, that angels and aliens are thought to be different entities. By societies current definition of aliens, aliens and angels might not be referring to the same entities, but I think they are, and I will reveal exactly why I think this.

Also, angels aren't the only entities mentioned in scripture that might exist within the cosmos. Even if angels aren't aliens – the Bible lists other entities that might be.

After reading all of the chapters in this section, all of the different terms referring to existing entities will be fully defined. Simply by defining entities found within scripture, I believe many eyes will be opened to a reality the Bible speaks of, that many people never knew was there.



## References

- 1 Brad Steiger, *The UFO Abductors*, Berkley Edition, 1988, page 202.
- 2 *Enhanced Strong's Lexicon*, (Oak Harbor, WA: Logos Research Systems, Inc.) 1995.

## CHAPTER 4: ANGELS, THE SONS OF GOD, AND THEIR OFFSPRING, THE NEPHILIM

### 1. The astounding power of angels:

When people think of angels, they usually think of powerful beings that are capable of doing things that require a body transcendent of the physical realm. The angels recorded in scripture are powerful beings indeed. One angel, for instance, defended Israel against the Assyrian army, single handedly destroying 185,000 Assyrian soldiers:

2 Kings 19:35

<sup>35</sup>*And it came to pass that night, that the angel of the LORD went out, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians an hundred fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses. (Ha – they woke up dead!)*

This incident occurred following a dispute between Hezekiah, King of Judah, and the King of Assyria. I enjoy reading it, because the captain of the guard for Assyria boasts that no gods from any other nations that Assyria fought against helped them to prevail. God's response to this, found in King Hezekiah's prayer for help, (2 Kings 19:17-19), can be paraphrased as: "...but the God of Israel, IS-REAL." This becomes weightily evident when reflecting on the mass destruction of the Assyrian army.

Aside from the mass destruction of armies and cities (Sodom and Gomorrah), angels are also noted for their ability to fly (Matthew 28:2, Revelation 14:6), teleport (Acts 5:19-23), deliver messages in person (or *angel*, if you will) and psychically in dreams (Luke 1:13, Matthew 1:20, Genesis 31:11)<sup>1</sup>. They can also bless people with healing (John 5:2-6), curse people with blindness (Genesis 19:1-3), muteness (Luke 1:20), and make people feint (Matthew 28:2). All of these powers indicate entities of a supernatural, spiritual nature. Furthermore, Psalms 104:1-4 and Ephesians 6:12 indicate that angels are indeed spiritual beings.

Psalms 104:1-4

<sup>1</sup>*Bless the LORD, O my soul. O LORD my God, thou art very great; ... <sup>4</sup>Who maketh his angels spirits; his ministers a flaming fire:*

Ephesians 6:10-13

<sup>12</sup>*For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.*

### 2. Confusion with classifying angels:

Do these reference apply to *all* angels? Here is where some confusion may arise due to the liberal use of the term angel. Psalms 104:1-4 wasn't necessarily stating that angels are strictly spiritual beings. Also, not *all* angels are enveloped in flaming fire. The angels in Ezekiel 1:4-14, for instance, were angels surrounded by flames of fire, but don't even come close to the *human* appearance of the angels that destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah, among others, which were usually mistaken for being male humans.

## Ezekiel 1:4-14

<sup>4</sup>And I looked, and, behold, a whirlwind came out of the north, a great cloud, and a fire infolding itself, and a brightness was about it, and out of the midst thereof as the colour of amber, out of the midst of the fire. <sup>5</sup>Also out of the midst thereof came the likeness of four living creatures. And this was their appearance; they had the likeness of a man. <sup>6</sup>And every one had four faces, and every one had four wings. <sup>7</sup>And their feet were straight feet; and the sole of their feet was like the sole of a calf's foot: and they sparkled like the colour of burnished brass. <sup>8</sup>And they had the hands of a man under their wings on their four sides; and they four had their faces and their wings. <sup>9</sup>Their wings were joined one to another; they turned not when they went; they went every one straight forward. <sup>10</sup>As for the likeness of their faces, they four had the face of a man, and the face of a lion, on the right side: and they four had the face of an ox on the left side; they four also had the face of an eagle. <sup>11</sup>Thus were their faces: and their wings were stretched upward; two wings of every one were joined one to another, and two covered their bodies. <sup>12</sup>And they went every one straight forward: whither the spirit was to go, they went; and they turned not when they went. <sup>13</sup>As for the likeness of the living creatures, their appearance was like burning coals of fire, and like the appearance of lamps: it went up and down among the living creatures; and the fire was bright, and out of the fire went forth lightning. <sup>14</sup>And the living creatures ran and returned as the appearance of a flash of lightning.

As for the spiritual beings mentioned in Ephesians 6:10-13, these are spiritual beings that Christian's wrestle against. This distinguishes them as either fallen angels, or demons – (terms which are unique from each other, and I will define further in this book). Paul mentions them specifically as not having flesh and blood. I think there could be three possible explanations for this passage of scripture.

I don't think it would be unreasonable to rephrase Paul's statement as "...flesh and blood as we know it..." – because if fallen angels or demons have flesh and blood, it's probably different from ours.

Also, it may very well be that some powerful, evil beings may not have any physical form, nor are able to assume any physical form. I classify disincarnate fallen angels into this category, which I will simply call demons. I derive this classification from the assumption that A. Angels are physical beings, B. Angels that sin are cursed with death, and C. Once physically dead, their spirits continue to exist.

Demon is a broad term I use to describe both deceased fallen angels, (non-corporeal), and their deceased aberrant hybrid progeny, such as the Nephilim, (which again, I will discuss shortly). Demons are always distinguished in scripture as beings that seek embodiment, while angels don't. This denotes them as beings without physical bodies. They likewise aren't able to assume physical form by their power. They need hosts.

A final interpretation of Ephesians 6:10-13 is that Paul was emphasizing that we, as Christian's, aren't struggling *just against our own* flesh and blood, but against evil, spiritual beings. If this is what Paul meant, then he wasn't directly stating that the spiritual beings Christian's wrestle against aren't composed of flesh and blood. Just because these beings are spiritual, doesn't meant that they aren't physical either, or that they don't have the ability to become physical. Humans, for instance, are spiritual beings, as well as physical.

In any case, there are other scriptures that indicate that angels aren't strictly spiritual beings. The bottom line of Ephesians 6:10-13 is to be on your guard as a Christian, because there are evil spiritual beings everywhere, and Christians are in warfare against them, whether they like it or not. Christians must prepare for battle!



### 3. Are angels physical beings?

As for the issue of angels being physical beings, the fact of the matter is, *some* angels *can* assume a physical form as we might define *physical*. It may even be the natural state of some of them. In scripture, we find angels performing many tasks that require physical bodies. For an example, examine the angels that destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah in Genesis 19:1-3 that I just previously mentioned.

#### Genesis 19:1-3

<sup>1</sup>And there came two angels to Sodom at even; and Lot sat in the gate of Sodom: and Lot seeing them rose up to meet them; and he bowed himself with his face toward the ground; <sup>2</sup>And he said, Behold now, my lords, turn in, I pray you, into your servant's house, and tarry all night, and wash your feet, and ye shall rise up early, and go on your ways. And they said, Nay; but we will abide in the street all night. <sup>3</sup>And he pressed upon them greatly; and they turned in unto him, and entered into his house; and he made them a feast, and did bake unleavened bread, and they did eat.

In order to talk with Lot like a normal person, eat food, and grab and pull Lot's arm on two occasions, (later in the same chapter), they had to be physical entities.

There are two extreme examples of angels performing activities that make it very difficult to refute their physical nature. The first example is when Jacob, patriarch of the Old Testament, even wrestled with an angel (Genesis 32:24-30, also referred to in Hosea 12:2-4).

#### Genesis 32:24-30

<sup>24</sup>And Jacob was left alone; and there wrestled a man with him until the breaking of the day. <sup>25</sup>And when he saw that he prevailed not against him, he touched the hollow of his thigh; and the hollow of Jacob's thigh was out of joint, as he wrestled with him. <sup>26</sup>And he said, Let me go, for the day breaketh. And he said, I will not let thee go, except thou bless me. <sup>27</sup>And he said unto him, What is thy name? And he said, Jacob. <sup>28</sup>And he said, Thy name shall be called no more Jacob, but Israel: for as a prince hast thou power with God and with men, and hast prevailed. <sup>29</sup>And Jacob asked him, and said, Tell me, I pray thee, thy name. And he said, Wherefore is it that thou dost ask after my name? And he blessed him there. <sup>30</sup>And Jacob called the name of the place Peniel: for I have seen God face to face, and my life is preserved.

#### Hosea 2:2-4

<sup>2</sup>The LORD hath also a controversy with Judah, and will punish Jacob according to his ways; according to his doings will he recompense him. <sup>3</sup>He took his brother by the heel in the womb, and by his strength he had power with God: <sup>4</sup>Yea, he had power over the angel, and prevailed.

The other extreme example is found in Genesis chapter 6 and is also referred to in Jude 1:6, and 2 Peter 2:4. This second example will be the primary focus of this chapter.

#### Genesis 6:1-13

<sup>1</sup>And it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the earth, and daughters were born unto them, <sup>2</sup>That the sons of God saw the daughters of men that they were fair; and they took them wives of all which they chose. <sup>3</sup>And the LORD said, My spirit shall not always strive with man, for that he also is flesh: yet his days shall be an hundred and twenty years. <sup>4</sup>There were giants in the earth in those days; and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare children to them, the same became mighty men which were of old, men of renown. <sup>5</sup>And GOD saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. <sup>6</sup>And it repented the LORD that he had made man on the earth, and it grieved him at his heart. <sup>7</sup>And the LORD said, I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the earth; both man, and beast, and the creeping thing, and the fowls of the air; for it repenteth me that I have made them. <sup>8</sup>But

Noah found grace in the eyes of the LORD. 9These are the generations of Noah: Noah was a just man and perfect in his generations, and Noah walked with God. 10And Noah begat three sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth. 11The earth also was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled with violence. 12And God looked upon the earth, and, behold, it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted his way upon the earth. 13And God said unto Noah, The end of all flesh is come before me; for the earth is filled with violence through them; and, behold, I will destroy them with the earth.

Jude 1:6

<sup>6</sup>And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day. <sup>7</sup>Even as Sodom and Gomorrha, and the cities about them in like manner, giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh, are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire.

2 Peter 2:4-6

<sup>4</sup>For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment; <sup>5</sup>And spared not the old world, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the world of the ungodly; <sup>6</sup>And turning the cities of Sodom and Gomorrha into ashes condemned them with an overthrow, making them an ensample unto those that after should live ungodly;

This example in Genesis 6 opens Pandora's Box, and warrants an extended discussion. It refers to angels that sinned, inbreeding with humans! They not only had sex with human women, but bore offspring, which is an indication that they were physical *by nature*. It is possible that the Sons of God are angels that assumed physical form, and were able to mate – I won't rule this out. I just think it's more likely that they are physical by nature, and I will explain why before this chapter is through.

Here again, we see a distinction. The word *angel* denotes that there are different types of angels that could be spoken of. In this instance, it should be assumed that humans weren't mating with 4 headed, 6 winged Seraphim angels, that are described by Ezekiel as having eyes everywhere, and are surrounded by balls of fire and bolts of lightning. (Any attempt would probably result in death!) The angels that *sinned*, mating with humans, were obviously humanoid, and genetically very closely related to earth humans, because they were capable of producing offspring with them.

Why would angels go through all the trouble to assume a *temporary* physical form capable of the vast complex ability of reproduction that could result in offspring? Assuming temporary physical forms that could perform rudimentary tasks is one thing; androids could do such. But reproduction is far more complex than eating, talking, and making physical contact with people. Reproduction is *serious* – biological physical contact!

### 3.1 The Sethite theory:

Many theologians of relatively recent times have had great difficulty in accepting the possibility that an angel can mate with a human being, and bear offspring. (Strange that the secular media would accept it, while theologians generally scoff at it. In movies such a *Michael*, and *City of Angels* – this phenomenon is portrayed, yet sadly it's cast in a deceptive light. Both these moves glorify this satanic activity).

Following is an excerpt taken from my NIV Study Bible commentary notes concerning Genesis chapter 6:

*“The ‘Sons of God’ has been interpreted here (Genesis 6) to refer either to*

*angels or to human beings. In such places as Job 1:6, 2:1, it refers to angels, and perhaps also in Psalms 29:1 (where it's translated "mighty ones"). Some interpreters also appeal to Jude 1:6-7 (as well as to Jewish literature) in referring the phrase here to angels.*

*Others, however, maintain that intermarriage and cohabitation between angels and human beings, though commonly mentioned in ancient mythologies, are surely excluded by the very nature of the created order (Mark 12:25). Elsewhere, expressions equivalent to "Sons of God" often refer to human beings, though in contexts quite different from the present one (see Deuteronomy 14:1, 32:5; Psalms 73:15; Isaiah 43:6; Hosea 1:10, 11:1; Luke 3:38; 1 John 3:1-2, 10.) Sons of God, possibly refers to godly men, and "Daughters of men" to sinful women (significantly, they are not called "Daughters of God", probably from the wicked line of Cain. If so, the context suggests that Genesis 6:1-2 describe the intermarriage of the Sethites ("Sons of God") of Genesis chapter 5 with the Cainites ("Daughters of men") of Genesis chapter 4, indicating a breakdown in the separation of the two groups.*

*Another plausible suggestion is that the "Sons of God" refers to royal figures (Kings were closely associated with gods in the ancient Near East) who proudly perpetuated and aggravated the corrupt life-style of Lamech son of Cain (virtually a royal figure) and established for themselves royal harems."<sup>2</sup>*

If the Sons of God in Genesis 6 are *not angels*, then it's easier for most people to accept, but the argument in favor of the Sons of God *being* angels is more credible in my opinion. Most biblical evidence, I have discovered, points to the Sons of God in Genesis 6 being angels.

### 3.2 The Sons of God – angels:

Indeed, even though the context of the phrase Sons of God as mentioned in Genesis and Job indicates angels, many have considered this possibility far fetched, because it's too weird of an interpretation. There are also some apparent conflicts. Can angels have sex?!? To say "No" seems to contradict Genesis 6. To say "Yes" seems to contradict Matthew 22:30, Mark 12:25, and Luke 20:34-46 (Angels don't marry, nor are given in marriage).

Does the Sethite theory resolve this contradiction? No, instead, it raises more problems than it attempts to resolve.

As previously mentioned, the Sethite theory suggests that descendents from the godly line of Seth, (third son of Adam), mated with descendents from the wicked line of Cain. Does this explain why their offspring were Nephilim (giants), *genetic monstrosities of nature*? No, it doesn't. Now if one were to ardently hold to the Sethite theory, it could be expounded upon to suggest that the Nephilim (giants) were aberrations because they were the products of offspring between *glorified* humans of the line of Seth, and *sinful, less-glorified* humans of the line of Cain. So the origin of giants might be explained as an anomaly created by differences in glory, but now on to argument number two.

The Sons of God are *sinning* heavily in mating with the *daughters of men*, in so much that they were cast down and imprisoned in darkness and awaiting judgement.

Scripture doesn't state that they were committing adultery, or fornicating outside the confines of marriage. Why was it such a sin for descendents of the line of Seth to intermarry with descendents of the line of Cain? Nowhere in scripture is any such sanction imposed upon the line of Seth. God declared that Israelites shouldn't intermarry with non-Israelites, and this was mentioned several places in scripture, because of its vast importance in Israel's commitment to God. If this distinction was made for the Israelites, and was emphasized so many times in scripture, why would a similar sanction on the line of Seth be completely absent from scripture?

Going further, why would the children of such a godly line, the line of Seth, be *inherently* evil, as were these giants, the Nephilim? One would think that something better would come of the offspring of the glorified Sons of God, at least by random chance. After all, at least one parent was from a glorified line. Why were *all* their progeny evil?

Saving the best argument for last, I've discovered that it's basically impossible for the Sethite theory to be true, because of a logical error. In the flood of Noah, according to the Sethite theory, all the Cainites were killed. This can be assumed for two reasons. First of all, God blessed Noah and his children in Genesis 9:1.

Genesis 9:1

*<sup>1</sup>And God blessed Noah and his sons, and said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth.*

If Noah, Shem, Ham, or Japeth, had any wife descending from the line of Cain – holding to the Sethite theory – they would've been cursed by God, not blessed! (Note that the Sons of God that sinned were cast down into hell and awaiting judgement (Jude 1:1-6, 2 Peter 2:4-6)).

Secondly, from the direct descendents of Noah's three sons, no Nephilim (giants) are ever mentioned in his lineage – *until after many generations*. God had no intention of continuing the existence of evil giants in the earth. He wanted the earth to begin with a blessing – refreshed, pure, and holy. Where were these giants coming from, if not from Noah's family?

If God purified the earth, and all the descendents from the line of Cain were destroyed in the flood of Noah, then how did the Nephilim get back into the earth after the flood? For Genesis 6:4 clearly states that the *Sons of God* continued mating with the *daughters of men*, and bearing offspring that were giants, even after the flood. It should therefore become apparent that the Sethite theory is impossible, because Sethites *couldn't* have been mating with *Cainites*, if there were no Cainites!

With all these strikes against the Sethite theory, I find the explanation of the Sons of God being angels to be much more plausible than their being glorified descendents from the line of Seth.

But if the Sons of God were angels, the question still remains: How could it be, that angels can have sex?!? I will answer this question, but before I do, I will first provide more evidence in support of the Sons of God being angels.

Evidence supporting that the angels that sinned were physical by nature – and were in fact angels – can be uncovered by analyzing their offspring, the "Nephilim", also referred to as "Rapha", or "Rephaim", which were giants. References to these half-breeds are found in scripture wherever the word giant appears. (Nephilim: Genesis 6:4;

Numbers 13:33; Rapha, also translated Rephaim: Deuteronomy 2:11, 2:20, 3:11, 3:13; Joshua 12:4, 13:12, 15:8, 17:15, 18:16; 2 Samuel 21:16, 21:18, 21:20, 21:22; and 1 Chronicles 20:4, 20:6, and 20:8).

Why weren't these offspring normal humans? This can be attributed to two factors. First of all, their parents might be genetically different species of humanoids, i.e., like the slight difference between a horse and a donkey – which when mated together, produce the mutated sterile offspring of mules. Goliath, for instance, the well famed giant smote by King David, was not only a giant, but was also noted as having six fingers on both hands, and six toes on both feet (2 Samuel 21:20). Does this not sound like a genetic mutation anomaly?

Secondly, the level of glory of the angels that sinned sexually with humans was higher than humanities, which might be responsible for supernatural anomalies. Consider that scripture states there were *legends* concerning these entities. The offspring of *the gods*, (i.e., found in Greek mythos, and Indian (Vedas), Native American (Anazasi, Hopi, Navajo), and Chinese records) <sup>3</sup>, were often reported to have supernatural powers, which is probably why they were legendary, and even worshiped in some cases.

Personally, I believe these genetic monstrosities were a combination of both genetic, and glorified differences between the angels that sinned, and the humans of earth. Concerning their power and dominance, I think they were genetically designed to conquer the world. The Sons of God may have genetically manipulated themselves in experiments to plan out their offspring to have the most dominant, powerful traits as possible. I will return to this theme after providing more background information.

Before I delve into Genesis 6 any further, I would like to point out the fact that I've crossed two definitional boundaries. The first boundary I crossed was with Jacob, and his wrestling match with an *angel*. Genesis calls this entity a "Man", but Hosea refers to the entity that wrestled with Jacob as an angel. As for Jacob himself, he thought the *Man* was God. Exactly who was this mysterious figure? He may have been one of the race of humanoid angels I've been discussing – (Sons of God), but not a sinful one, obviously. He was the one that dubbed Jacob – Israel. In reality, nobody really knows who He was, and He didn't want anyone to know either, because He refused to tell Jacob what His name was. With all this put before us, the liberal definition of angel is sufficient, because we know that this entity was not merely a man, judging from the supernatural power he exhibited, and that he had the authority to rename Jacob to Israel. I suspect he was the pre-incarnate Jesus, because it has always been his characteristic to rename His chosen, but that's just my own opinion.

Also, the second definitional boundary I crossed was the Sons of God. As I have already argued, the Sons of God can be interpreted as *angels* in several passages of scripture. Again, these are angelic beings that are described, and sometimes even mistaken for being male humans.

### 3.3 The link between the flood, and Sodom and Gomorrah:

If the connection is made that the Sons of God that mated with humans were in fact angels, then it should be clear that both the references in Jude and Peter I previously alluded to were concerning these Sons of God that sinned.

When reading these two passages of scripture – Jude 1:6-7, and 2 Peter 2:4 – both

references are linked with the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah. Jude mentions that the Sodomites gave themselves over to *strange* flesh. This term, in Greek: “heteros”, {ajllloiovw}, is translated as “Other”.<sup>4</sup> Is this not revealing? Going further into this event, let’s now look at why Sodom and Gomorrah are specifically linked to these angels that sinned, spoken of by Peter, and Jude. In Genesis, let me pull out two passages of scripture for analysis.

#### Genesis 18:20-22

<sup>20</sup>And the LORD said, Because the cry of Sodom and Gomorrah is great, and because their sin is very grievous; <sup>21</sup>I will go down now, and see whether they have done altogether according to the cry of it, which is come unto me; and if not, I will know. <sup>22</sup>And the men (angels) turned their faces from thence, and went toward Sodom: but Abraham stood yet before the LORD.

#### Genesis 19:4-9

<sup>4</sup>But before they lay down, the men of the city, even the men of Sodom, compassed the house round, both old and young, all the people from every quarter: <sup>5</sup>And they called unto Lot, and said unto him, Where are the men which came in to thee this night? bring them out unto us, that we may know (uh... my paraphrase – have sex with) them. <sup>6</sup>And Lot went out at the door unto them, and shut the door after him, <sup>7</sup>And said, I pray you, brethren, do not so wickedly. <sup>8</sup>Behold now, I have two daughters which have not known man; let me, I pray you, bring them out unto you, and do ye to them as is good in your eyes: only unto these men do nothing; for therefore came they under the shadow of my roof. <sup>9</sup>And they said, Stand back. And they said again, This one fellow came in to sojourn, and he will needs be a judge: now will we deal worse with thee, than with them. And they pressed sore upon the man, even Lot, and came near to break the door.

So what we find here is that Sodom and Gomorrah are so incredibly evil, God can’t stand it anymore. Is this really the case? God personally sends his two angels to destroy it. Why? When I look at the cities of today, like Los Angeles, and New York, I wonder why God hasn’t obliterated *them* yet. The cities of today are full of wretched evil. Exactly what were Sodom and Gomorrah doing that was any worse than what we have today?

Delving deeper, what did God mean when He said, “I will go down now, and see whether they have done altogether according to the cry of it.”? Dropping down to Genesis 19:4-9, we find just exactly what God was expecting. The people of Sodom and Gomorrah saw two angels enter the city, and were so enthralled with wanting to rape them, they didn’t even care about Lot’s virgin daughters he offered them in exchange! (It could be – *conjecture here* – just as found in Greek mythology, mating with these beings was possibly pleasurable beyond what we know sex to be.)

This sexual immorality is possibly what God was expecting – and this is why Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed. Sodom and Gomorrah were a haven of sexual immorality, even that between fallen-angels and humans.

### 3.4 Why Noah?

The sexual immorality found in Sodom and Gomorrah is the same as that found in Genesis 6, and was probably what spawned the flood of Noah. When God destroyed the entire world in the flood of Noah, it was because of the angels that sinned. When the Sons of God started mating with the daughters of men at that time, afterwards the earth was filled with evil giants. These corrupt beings dominated the planet, and were the

reason that God was sorry He ever made man.

But scripture states that Noah found grace in the eyes of the Lord, and that Noah was just and walked with God, and was *perfect* in his generations. The grace that Noah found in the eyes of the Lord, I think, is speaking about Noah's perception of the eyes of God. As for being just, and walking with God – well, Noah was a pretty great guy! But what does *perfect* in his generations refer to? The word “Perfect”, translates to “tamiym”{!ymiT;}}, which means “Without Blemish”.<sup>5,6</sup> Noah, *genetically speaking*, was a pure-strain human, not some half-breed superhero giant.

#### Genesis 6:8-9

<sup>8</sup>*But Noah found grace in the eyes of the LORD. <sup>9</sup>These are the generations of Noah: Noah was a just man and perfect in his generations, and Noah walked with God.*

What I think was really was going on in these days was Satan's plan of attack to prevent the birth of the Messiah. Jesus couldn't have been born from a corrupt line of fallen angels. Jesus had to be born the Son of Man, and the Only Begotten Son of God. So to prevent Satan from corrupting the entire human race, God completely annihilated the whole world, because at that time, most of the entire human genetic structure, with the exception of Noah's family, was polluted. Then, after the flood of Noah, God promised He would never destroy the world again. Note: He never promised He wouldn't destroy any cities. Genesis 6:4 mentions that the Sons of God mating with humans didn't end after the flood. The brief mention of “...in those days; and also after that”, refers to the fact that the fallen angels, the Sons of God, continued to sin with the daughters of men, and with men in cases of homosexuality, as found in Sodom and Gomorrah, even after the flood.

God feels the same way now about this sin, as He did back then. Incidents after the flood continued to crop up, because a few races of giants are spoken of in scripture as existing in the world after the flood. They certainly weren't the dominant force in the world the way they used to be. I think the reason why is because God dealt with the Nephilim, and the fallen angels mating with humans that produced them – like a disease. When incidents increased in particular areas, such as Sodom and Gomorrah, God stepped in and immediately exterminated them. Sodom and Gomorrah probably weren't the only places God dealt His wrath in this manner either, because Jude 1:7 mentions that there were other cities – “<sup>7</sup>*Even as Sodom and Gomorrah, and the cities about them in like manner...*”

#### 3.5 Alien abductions in prophesy:

This information about the Sons of God is very important, prophetically speaking. Why? Because these things are still going on today! Both Matthew 24:37, and Luke 17:26-30 quote Jesus as stating that the end times will be a return to the days of Noah. What typified the days of Noah? Fallen angels inbreeding with humans. Luke 17:26-30 especially points to this conclusion, because again, not only the days of Noah are mentioned, but Sodom and Gomorrah are mentioned as well.

#### Matthew 24:37

<sup>37</sup>*But as the days of Noe (Noah) were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.*

## Luke 17:26-30

*<sup>26</sup>And as it was in the days of Noe (Noah), so shall it be also in the days of the Son of man. <sup>27</sup>They did eat, they drank, they married wives, they were given in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark, and the flood came, and destroyed them all. <sup>28</sup>Likewise also as it was in the days of Lot; they did eat, they drank, they bought, they sold, they planted, they builded; <sup>29</sup>But the same day that Lot went out of Sodom it rained fire and brimstone from heaven, and destroyed them all. <sup>30</sup>Even thus shall it be in the day when the Son of man is revealed.*

To briefly recap: Satan's initial plan of attack was to pollute the seed of humanity, and prevent the birth of Christ. While doing so, He had his minions genetically develop a means of producing a master race of warriors; chaotic, and utterly evil. These beings would be capable, by brute force, of taking any women they chose, (which scripture indicates that they took any they chose), and killing all who would defy them. This plan almost worked for Satan, but then God had to come and mess everything up for him. (Thank God!)

Quickly after the flood, Satan began his plan again, but it just wasn't working as good as it did before. God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah, (*and possibly other cities as well*), then sent in Israel to destroy the rest of these giants, empowering his chosen humans, the Israelites, with His divine, supernatural power. Basically, these giants were wiped out.

Did Satan quit? Of course not! I think this is why most of the alien abductions going on these days deal with reproductive experiments. Anyone familiar with the field of genetics should be aware of the fact that a primary portion of this type of research involves many aspects of reproduction. Certainly, the gray bug-eyed creatures frequently reported to abduct people don't want sperm and egg samples as desktop souvenirs. I likewise don't imagine that the aliens that collect these samples are simply participating in some bizarre ritual relative to cow-tipping in Wisconsin. (Sounds like a Far-Side comic of a couple of aliens wearing T-shirts saying "Earth 2000, I was there", and pictured underneath the words are a couple of terrified humans having their... uh, let's not go there.)

Anyway, these alien beings are obviously working on something other than giants. I think – they are working on several things. First of all, they would like to produce a human of superior intellect, and possibly supernatural power. Secondly, I think they are experimenting with cybernetics, trying to integrate the human consciousness into computer chips. (Imagine how attracted humanity would be to such technology?) Successive chapters in this book will elaborate upon these theories, so don't worry. I'm not just throwing out these ideas, and leaving them sit there without any follow up.

I don't think these gray bug-eyed alien abductors we see shows on TV about are the Sons of God. I believe the Sons of God are humanoid. But the gray creatures may be particularly knowledgeable in the field of genetics, and that's why they are assigned to the task of genetic experimentation. (They were probably the ones that developed the means to produce giants.) They are most likely helping the Sons of God, because one among the Sons of God is a great leader among many of them, and many other species throughout all existence. In fact, *he* is a leader of a whopping one third the Hosts of Heaven! Uh, oops, getting ahead of myself. Sorry.

Concerning aliens in prophesy, best selling author Hal Lindsey believes as I do, that they have ties with the demonic. While his interpretation of the UFO/alien



phenomenon is that aliens are simply earth-bound demons posing as entities from other worlds, he does believe that the UFO/alien phenomenon will play a part in the end-times scenario. He mentions several key relevant passages of scripture indicating this. I highly recommend his work, for anyone interested in prophesy.<sup>7</sup> Chapter 4 of his book *Planet Earth – 2000 A.D.*, is especially relevant to this chapter, the only exception being that his definition of aliens is different than mine.

All of this information I've given on the Sons of God appears to fit with scripture so far, but there is one very big detail I have still yet to answer. Saying that the Sons of God are angels, and did mate with humans, poses some apparent contradictions, because of Matthew 22:30, Mark 12:25, and Luke 20:34-36.

Matthew 22:30

<sup>30</sup>*For in the resurrection they (people) neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are as the angels of God in heaven.*

Mark 12:25

<sup>25</sup>*For when they shall rise from the dead, they neither marry, nor are given in marriage; but are as the angels which are in heaven.*

Luke 20:34-36.

<sup>34</sup>*And Jesus answering said unto them, The children of this world marry, and are given in marriage: <sup>35</sup>But they which shall be accounted worthy to obtain that world, and the resurrection from the dead, neither marry, nor are given in marriage: <sup>36</sup>Neither can they die any more: for they are equal unto the angels; and are the children of God, being the children of the resurrection.*

### 3.6 Marriage and sex among angels:

Now that all the evidence has been submitted supporting the theory that the Sons of God in Genesis 6 were angels, I will finally get to the question concerning angels and sex. How is this? Is there sex among angels? Please pardon me while I take this detour. I'm still answering the question that some angels might be physical by nature. I find it necessary to take this detour though, because it's necessary in order to span the full scope of defining the entities spoken of in the Bible. Jesus said that angels don't marry, nor are they given in marriage (Matthew 22:30, Mark 12:25, and Luke 20:34-46). If this is so, then *how* could the Sons of God, *angels*, be having sexual relations with the daughters of men?

It should be noted that while Jesus states in Matthew 22:30, Mark 12:25, and Luke 20:34-36, that *we will be like the angels, which neither marry, nor are given in marriage*, He doesn't say that it's impossible for angels to have sex. But to say that angels can have sex, and yet no marriage, means that sex would have to take place outside the confines of marriage. Again, we have another apparent contradiction. Sex outside the confines of marriage is defined as sinful in scripture in MANY places: (Acts 15:20, 15:29, 21:25; Romans 1:29; 1 Corinthians 6:13, 6:18; Galatians 5:18; and Ephesians 5:3, just to mention a few).

When referencing these scriptures, it's important to realize that in none of them does it indicate that sexual relations outside the confines of marriage is acceptable by any means. Sex outside of marriage is a moral absolute, and isn't okay if it's *safe* (fallacy) and prevents the spread of disease, or even if the two people love each other, or to protect the institution of family for the children's sake, etc. Disease, jealousy and emotional problems, and broken families are often the results of fornication, but are never indicated

to be the reason God declares fornication sin. As for homosexuality, this is singled out as being an abomination (Romans 1:26-32; Leviticus 20:13), and fully despised of God.

So are we stuck? How can sex exist among angels, without the institution of marriage to confine it? Mormon theology sort of finds a way around Matthew 22:30, Mark 12:25, and Luke 20:34-36. Mormons interpret these scriptures to mean that all the marrying is done here on earth, but the marriage contract extends into heaven, because Matthew 16:19 states that “Whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven.” Therefore, the act of getting married doesn’t occur in heaven, but the actual institution of marriage does. Mormons also use Ecclesiastes 3:14 to support the eternal nature of the marriage contract, which states that:

Ecclesiastes 3:14

<sup>14</sup> *Whatsoever God doeth, it shall be forever.*

On the surface, this appears to be a sound argument to support the existence of the institution of marriage in heaven. When put to the test though, it doesn’t hold water. The Mormon interpretation of Matthew 22:30 violates one of the primary laws of hermeneutics (literary standard by which scripture should be interpreted), which states that scripture should be interpreted within its context. To get an accurate assessment of Matthew 22:30, Mark 12:25, and Luke 20:34-36, one needs to back up and read the passages that precede them. I’ll just take Matthew 22:23-29 for my example. This passage consists of the question that prompted Jesus’ answer – which is Matthew 22:30. (What good is an answer if one doesn’t know what the question is?) Jesus was presented with the example of a woman who had married seven brothers, each dying successively one after the other. When she reached heaven, who was she really married to? Jesus answered saying that we will be like the angels – not marrying, nor given in marriage. If the marriage contract were still valid, Jesus would’ve had to state which brother she would be married to, but He specifically didn’t!

If the Mormon view of marriage holds true, I would thus present the same question. Exactly who would such a woman be married to, as if Jesus’ answer wasn’t good enough?

Since Mormons believe in polygamy, (or do they still?), the Mormon answer might very well be “All!” Trying not to get off the subject too much, (*though it appears I already have*), but now we have a new question. Is polygamy acceptable to God, and if so, will it exist in heaven? Sure, why not? – NOT! The answer is “No” to both questions.

The question of whether or not polygamy is sinful is actually a little harder to answer than most people might think. I mean, sure, it’s easy for most people to say that it’s wrong – in American society, it’s considered wrong – *by most anyway*. *The way things are going...* But does that make polygamy a *culturally relative sin*? After all, some of the greatest patriarchs of the Old Testament were polygamists. Does this mean that polygamy is acceptable? Again, I must reiterate, absolutely not! But because of the integrity of the Old Testament patriarchs, I’m compelled to elaborate on exactly why polygamy is a sin. (*As for culturally relative sin – God is ethnocentric by anthropological standards, so I really don’t have any qualms saying that there is no such thing as cultural relativism when dealing with moral absolutes.*)

Let me begin with the sin of adultery. This is one of the Ten Commandments that

everyone is familiar with – so we can all begin on the same sheet of music. What exactly is adultery? Answer: Adultery is when a married person has sex with someone other than his/her marriage partner, (with the exception of rape – where choice may not be an option on the victim's behalf). If polygamy is not a sin, then one could justifiably marry anyone he/she desired to have sex with, thus escape the sin of adultery. Taking this a step further, one could expand polygamy to large groups of people, who after getting married to each other, could thus subject themselves to orgies. If polygamy isn't a sin, then this wouldn't be considered sinful.

Let's just say that the entire United States of America institutes a polygamy campaign, marrying people numbering in the thousands, so that in a matter of a few years, all the people in the entire United States are married to each other. (Sounds like the goal of the 1960's free-love movement). In order to identify someone you were married to, you would be issued a U.S. citizenship marriage campaign card.

In this scenario, you could have sex with anyone at any time, and it wouldn't be committing fornication, or adultery, because whoever you were having sex with, (with the exception of homosexuality), would be your marriage partner. Technically, this wouldn't be considered sin. All that would have to transpire is for each individual to flash their U.S. citizenship marriage campaign card, (among other things), then everything would be holy and sanctified under God.

Given this scenario, as absurd as it is, exactly what meaning does marriage have at this point? Absolutely none. Therefore, if polygamy is not considered a sin, then marriage and the sin of adultery mean nothing. Since God is the originator of marriage, then marriage certainly has meaning, and polygamy is obviously man's way of trying to circumvent his sin through his own works. "I won't commit adultery – I'll just *marry* 1000 women" thought King Solomon. How absurd.

Now that you've tasted the logical argument against polygamy, let's take a moment to look at the examples of polygamy we find in scripture. Whenever the intricate details of polygamous relationships were chronicled, there were always numerous problems. Abraham, Jacob, King David, and King Solomon all lived in polygamous relationships. All paid heavily for it. In Abraham and Jacob's lives, there was always bitter resentment, partiality, extreme jealousy (go figure), grief and discontentment – everyone paid the price. With King David, his plan to put Uriah the Hittite on the front lines of battle to be killed, so he (*David*) could have Bathsheba as another wife, ended in a tragedy that resulted in the death of one of his children, and plagued him for the rest of his life. As for King Solomon, he suffered the worst fate of all; deception into idolatry because his wives deceived him away from the Lord.

Aside from the logical arguments disclosing polygamy as sin, and the living examples, the Lord commands the men of Israel not to undertake the practice of polygamy in Deuteronomy 17:17

#### Deuteronomy 17:17

<sup>17</sup>*Neither shall he multiply wives to himself, that his heart turn not away.*

From all of the aforementioned, it should be clear that polygamy is sin. But for the sake of thoroughness, I don't want to forget about the other passage of scripture I mentioned that Mormon's use to support the *so-called* eternal nature of the marriage contract. Ecclesiastes 3:14 gives us the following:

Ecclesiastes 3:14

<sup>14</sup>*Whatsoever God doeth, it shall be forever.*

This is one of those cryptic passages of scripture that makes me scratch my head. But after scratching my head for a moment, I recall Matthew 24:35.

Matthew 24:35

<sup>35</sup>*Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away.*

Revelation 21:1 refers to the same event spoken of in Matthew 24:35, that heaven and earth will pass away, giving way to a new heaven, and a new earth.

Revelation 21:1

<sup>1</sup>*And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea.*

From what can be seen, it appears that Ecclesiastes 3:14 is contradicting Matthew 24:35, and Revelation 21:1, because Ecclesiastes 3:14 is stating that what God does lasts forever, while the other two scriptures state that the vast existence of heaven and earth will *pass away*. Since the Bible never contradicts itself, there must be an explanation other than contradiction.

I think this perceived contradiction can be eliminated by dissecting the term “*forever*”. What is forever, anyway? From scripture, it is given that God is an eternal being, without beginning, or end. Knowing this, it can be accurately assessed that God is outside the space-time domain altogether. From God’s perspective, all things that ever were, are, or ever will be, can be thought of as continuously present, for He is omniscient, and omnipresent. Therefore if “*God doeth*” something, from His perspective, it “...*shall be done forever*”, because for God, all things are *forever* present. So, getting back to the marriage contract, to us, our marriage contract may appear from the perspective of linear time to have a distinct beginning and end. To God though, the time frame in which that marriage contract existed will exist forever.

This is the best I can do concerning this passage of scripture, because I know the Bible doesn’t contradict itself. This interpretation of *forever* doesn’t apply to just anything. The eternal nature of God, Heaven, Hell, and spirits, for instance, literally exist for eternity – not just from God’s perspective, because there are mountains of scripture to support their eternal nature. Ecclesiastes 3:14 is just one passage of scripture, and in order not to contradict other scripture, it needs a fitting interpretation that complements other scripture. The interpretation I have just given does just that. But aside from all this, it should be clear that when Mormons apply Ecclesiastes 3:14 to the marriage contract, they are clearly taking it out of context.

Now that all of the above about marriage and sex among angels has been discussed, it should be evident that the angels in heaven don’t have sex, and aren’t married, nor will we people have sex or marry, once resurrected and translated into heaven. (*Note: there is no sex bound with marriage in the highest heaven – but in the New Jerusalem, which is the 2<sup>nd</sup> heaven, there probably is, because Isaiah mentions that there will be children there*). Have I gotten anywhere, or have I just wandered off the

subject? Yes.

In summation, some angels came to earth and had sex with humans and bore offspring, **but they weren't supposed to**, and this was a sin for them to do. This is obvious, judging from the fact that they were chained in darkness in the depths of hell.

Angels aren't *supposed* to have sex, but this doesn't rule out the fact that they are *capable* of it. This is still a confusing concept, because to conclude that they are able to have sex and reproduce, but shouldn't, doesn't make sense! I have another theory. Wipe the sweat off your brow, and brace yourself!

### 3.7 Why *can* angels sexually reproduce, but shouldn't? The Butterfly theory:

I mentioned earlier that I thought it would be unlikely that the Sons of God mentioned in Genesis 6 would be capable of having sex and bearing offspring, if they weren't explicitly designed to do so. I have a theory that may suggest a possible explanation to this. I call it my "*Butterfly*" theory. Humans were designed by God to be transformed, like a butterfly, into a new nature.

Remember when Adam and Eve were first created in the Garden of Eden? At this time in human history, earth was in heaven, and humans were in open contact with God, communicating directly face to face with Him. (I will elaborate on the different realms of heaven in chapter 9 of this book.)

Adam and Eve were *glorified* beings (*not translated – there is a distinction*), and they were married and had sex with each other. (At this time, there was sex in heaven – but Adam and Eve weren't angels, and they were married, so it was holy and sanctioned by God.) The first appearances of the marriage contract are found in Genesis 2:21-25, and Genesis 3:16, and are expounded upon greatly in scripture in other books, from this point on.

#### Genesis 2:21-25

<sup>21</sup>And the LORD God caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam, and he slept: and he took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh instead thereof; <sup>22</sup>And the rib, which the LORD God had taken from man, made he a woman, and brought her unto the man. <sup>23</sup>And Adam said, This is now bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh: she shall be called Woman, because she was taken out of Man. <sup>24</sup>Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh. <sup>25</sup>And they were both naked, the man and his wife, and were not ashamed.

#### Genesis 3:16

...and thy (Eve's) desire shall be to thy husband, and he shall rule over thee.

With this fresh in our minds, we should now recall that the institution of marriage will be done away with, and with it, sex, because of what is stated in Matthew 22:30, Mark 12:25, and Luke 20:34-36. From this, one could logically assume that the human race was initially designed to sexually reproduce within the confines of marriage, until reaching a certain point. Once this certain level of development is achieved, the human race will then be translated by God into a higher species, in which reproduction will no longer serve a function.

After translation, it may be probable that *appendages* testifying to humanities former nature might still exist. (We might still have our sexual organs when we're translated). But these appendages – (not really *appendages* when speaking of the female gender), will only serve as reminders of our former nature. They may eventually

disappear over time – or perhaps in future translations. One thing is for sure, *they won't be intended for use!* Why? Because there is no marriage in heaven, and without marriage, there is no sexual union.

To be honest, this concerned me when I came to this conclusion, but I console myself with the nature of God. I'm hopeful that God will relieve us from the burning desires of our bodies of flesh. It would be tough to have to deal with the desire of wanting sex, but being denied that desire – for eternity! But the only reason we have a desire to copulate is to serve God's first command to Adam and Eve as a couple, in Genesis 1:28, and that was "...to multiply and be fruitful." Since sexual reproduction will no longer be a part of our nature, I'm certain God will also remove our sex drive, which He installed to bless, and help ensure His command in Genesis 1:28. As for why He won't remove our sexual organs, perhaps He will leave them as conversation pieces? Ha! Actually, I don't really have any explanation for the existence of these physical attributes that may exist for a period of time, but, in nature, there do appear to be similar examples of this somewhat strange phenomenon; i.e. useless physical body parts. I will elaborate more on these in the chapter on evolution.

So with all that I've stated, it should be apparent that humans were designed to develop and reproduce for a while, then God will translate them into a higher species. Humans began as beings *lower than the angels*, even when they were *glorified* – and hadn't sinned yet, as verified in Hebrews 2:5-9, and Psalms 8:3

#### Hebrews 2:5-9

<sup>5</sup>For unto the angels hath he not put in subjection the world to come, whereof we speak. <sup>6</sup>But one in a certain place testified, saying, What is man, that thou art mindful of him? or the son of man, that thou visitest him? <sup>7</sup>Thou madest him a little lower than the angels; thou crownedst him with glory and honour, and didst set him over the works of thy hands: <sup>8</sup>Thou hast put all things in subjection under his feet. For in that he put all in subjection under him, he left nothing that is not put under him. But now we see not yet all things put under him. <sup>9</sup>But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.

#### Psalms 8:3

<sup>4</sup>What is man, that thou art mindful of him? and the son of man, that thou visitest him? <sup>5</sup>For thou hast made him a little lower than the angels, and hast crowned him with glory and honour. <sup>6</sup>Thou madest him to have dominion over the works of thy hands; thou hast put all things under his feet:

Currently, humans aren't classified as angels. Humans are *lower than the angels*, and therefore can't be considered to be angels. But once translated, humans will be equal with the angels. Not only that, humans will even be the judge over some angels.

#### Luke 20:34-35

<sup>34</sup>And Jesus answering said unto them, ... The children of this world ... which shall be accounted worthy to obtain that world, and the resurrection from the dead ... <sup>36</sup>Neither can they die any more: for they are equal unto the angels;

#### 1 Corinthians 6:3

<sup>3</sup>Know ye not that we shall judge angels?

The original question is: Are angels strictly spiritual beings? Now, a definite "No" can be fully established, and additional information which helps provide an understanding as to why it is possible for *some angels* to have sex, but shouldn't, is also fully disclosed.

After the resurrection, humans will resemble the nature of the translated humans we see in Genesis 6, which are referred to as *angels* in Jude and 2 Peter. After we, (humans that survive the resurrection), are translated, it wouldn't be incorrect to call us *angels*, because at this point, humans will be equal with the angels, and even judging some of them. We will be beings of translated flesh, and fully *capable* (key word – capable), of reproduction because *that was once our function*.

Furthermore, we will *be able to* bare offspring – but this offspring would be an abomination, because they would have been born through sin, and utter rebellion against God, and against humanities new translated nature. So now, it should be clearly evident that the Sons of God were capable of having sex, and offspring, but it was something terribly wrong for them to do. They were angels, and turned against the direction that God had glorified them. They turned back to their former state, turning their backs on God.

The term “Sons of God”, I believe is a term that can be applied to translated humans. It's for this reason that it's sometimes used for Christian humans – pointing to their future state of glory. It's also used for angels – which may be glorified, translated humans from other worlds. Whether or not the future translated humans of earth, and those we've encountered from heavenly realms in our past, are *exactly* the same species remains unknown.

One factor that distinguishes the humans of earth from humans originating elsewhere is the fact that God decided to make the humans from earth – from earth's soil, instead of through the same line as the humanoid angelic beings coming from elsewhere. This alone distinguishes earthling humans from others, whereas other species of humans coming from other worlds were probably created from the soil of their original habitations. In any case, if earthling humans aren't exactly the same as humans from other worlds, they are probably very similar. I say this, because there are many descriptions in scripture where the terms men and angels, referring to the Sons of God, are used interchangeably. Furthermore, earth humans were actually able to interbreed with these other humans from elsewhere, with tangible, (yet diluted and cursed), results. It is for this reason that I classify the species of angel termed the Sons of God, humanoid.

#### 4. What kind of angel is Satan?

Is this all I have to say about the Sons of God? Not quite. For the most part, if humanity encounters an alien species dwelling in the universe in open contact, (i.e., in public eye), and they are humans, this probably means bad news! Why?

First of all, true angels of God always give glory to God, and never desire to direct attention to themselves. God's faithful angels have been discreet in their appearances throughout the dawn of mankind, appearing to only select individuals of God's choosing, and only for very brief encounters. There are some exceptions to this general rule. God's dealings with Egypt weren't discrete, but were clearly demonstrations of God's will and power. But it should be noted that grand displays such as those in ancient Egypt are highly uncommon, and aren't God's usual methods of using angels. In any case, angels establishing open contact with humanity before Christ sets up His kingdom on earth doesn't sound like the will of God. People get to heaven through Jesus, not angels.

It's obvious from Genesis 6 that the Sons of God deliberately turned against God, and even their own nature which God had made them to be, mating with humans and producing children that were giants. Even the terms used to describe their offspring, indicate the nature of the sin involved. The term "Nephilim", which means giants, is derived from the primitive root word "Naphal" {naw-fal'} {lp'n:} } } } } }, which has such meanings as fall down, cast down, and fall away.<sup>8,9</sup> As for the other term referring to giants, "Rapha" {raw-faw'} {!yaip;r}, or "Raphah" {raw-faw'} {!yaip;r}, it is the exact same word used for ghosts of the dead, shades, and spirits. So even the meanings of the words used to describe their offspring indicates that they were descendents of fallen angels, and thus were satanic entities by nature.

Seeing that the Sons of God are humanoid angelic beings – and that they are fallen angels at that, (those in Genesis 6), should be reason enough not to trust them. But when I read in Job 1:6, and 2:1, that they're hanging out with Satan when Satan was requesting permission from God to tear Job's life apart, I get a very bad feeling in my stomach.

#### Job 1:6-11

*<sup>6</sup>Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan came also among them. <sup>7</sup>And the LORD said unto Satan, Whence comest thou? Then Satan answered the LORD, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it. <sup>8</sup>And the LORD said unto Satan, Hast thou considered my servant Job, that there is none like him in the earth, a perfect and an upright man, one that feareth God, and escheweth evil? <sup>9</sup>Then Satan answered the LORD, and said, Doth Job fear God for nought? <sup>10</sup>Hast not thou made an hedge about him, and about his house, and about all that he hath on every side? thou hast blessed the work of his hands, and his substance is increased in the land. <sup>11</sup>But put forth thine hand now, and touch all that he hath, and he will curse thee to thy face.*

#### Job 2:1

*<sup>1</sup>Again there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan came also among them to present himself before the LORD. <sup>2</sup>And the LORD said unto Satan, From whence comest thou? And Satan answered the LORD, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it. <sup>3</sup>And the LORD said unto Satan, Hast thou considered my servant Job, that there is none like him in the earth, a perfect and an upright man, one that feareth God, and escheweth evil? and still he holdeth fast his integrity, although thou movedst me against him, to destroy him without cause. <sup>4</sup>And Satan answered the LORD, and said, Skin for skin, yea, all that a man hath will he give for his life. <sup>5</sup>But put forth thine hand now, and touch his bone and his flesh, and he will curse thee to thy face.*



Perhaps I got this backwards. Instead of the Sons of God hanging out with Satan, don't these passages of scripture indicate that Satan – is hanging out with them? These passages of scripture reveal that there is a regularly appointed audience between God and the Sons of God, and Satan is among the Sons of God. Now why might Satan be among *them*, these humanoid angelic beings, specifically? Why, why, why? Could it be that this is the type of angel Satan is?

Consider Isaiah 14:12-15 as an opener to this query. Doesn't it appear that Lucifer is in essence, called a *man*?

Isaiah 14:12-15

<sup>12</sup>*How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations!* <sup>13</sup>*For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: <sup>14</sup>I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High. <sup>15</sup>Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit. <sup>16</sup>They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and consider thee, saying, Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms;*

Please understand that I'm only entertaining a possibility. I would like to emphatically remind all readers that it's merely my opinion that there is, in fact, a race of humanoid angels that came about as humans will one day be. This is merely my own conclusion. Keeping this in mind, simply read along with my conjecture, if not for any other reason than the mere curiosity of wondering what I'm going to say next.

Why does Satan show such a despising interest in Job in the previously discussed passages? In fact, why did Satan come to earth in person to deceive Eve, instead of appointing one of his lesser, underling followers to do it? My answer to this question is simple. Because Satan is probably a human that was translated; an angelic member of the species termed "Sons of God", and once was a ruler on a prior world – *or many worlds*. (See the last section of chapter 9 for more information on this).

When Adam and Eve were created, Satan was filled with jealous pride, hating God for creating new additions to the *kind* of angels termed "Sons of God". Enraged, threatened, and jealous, he personally has set out on a mission to destroy humanity on earth in any way he can.

There seems to be evidence that Satan is intimately linked with earth, in particular. Why is this? Why was Satan allowed access into the Garden of Eden? Was he not fallen and cast out of heaven, yet at that time, earth was in heaven? Why is it that when God cast him out of heaven, He flung him down to *earth*, of all places? (When I read *this*, I used to think to myself – "*Well gee! Couldn't he be thrown out to the sun, or in a black hole or something? Why earth!*")

From Revelation 1:16-20, we see that some of God's faithful angels are assigned positions of authority over churches, and in Daniel 10:12-14, we see that other angels, even those that have fallen and became evil, are still allowed to retain their authority in certain areas of the earth. (Daniel 10:12-14 refers to the Prince of Darkness ruling over Persia, which hindered the archangel Gabriel in his mission to deliver God's message to Daniel.)

What about Satan? According to 2 Corinthians 4:4, Satan's power over the earth is such that he is termed *god* of this world, (small "g", thank you very much. He's only called this to denote his power and influence). All three of the above references are

indications that powerful entities both good and evil, retain positions of authority over the affairs of the humans of earth – for a limited time. Satan’s role with humanity appears to bear a unique relationship though, because he was specifically cast out of heaven and down to earth, where his judgement will be met through the battle of Armageddon, and ending with his last uprising after the millennial reign.

Further defining Satan’s link with humanity is the fact that his defeat was through God becoming human, and crushing him altogether.

Is any of this really that important? Would it really even matter if Satan was at one time a human, and was translated into an angelic being? I don’t particularly think so. Most people know what Satan’s all about, and knowing his evil nature, and looking to Christ for answers is the important thing. I simply think that if he were a humanoid of some type, a few things in scripture would make a little more sense to me, that’s all.

Read carefully the way in which God presents Job to Satan. The book of Job has indeed always cast a shadow over many, (myself included), who wondered to no end why God would even bother to speak to Satan about Job. Doesn’t it make sense now, God saying to Satan, *“Have you considered my servant Job, that there is none like him in the earth, a perfect and an upright man, one that feareth God, ... etc.”*

One would think that Satan had at one time or another, given God every excuse in the book to justify his sins by finding fault with God. (I occasionally hear people accusing God of unjust evil. Don’t they know who they sound like?) In the book of Job, God appears to be using Job, a member of the same species, as an example to Satan that Satan’s prior arguments were nothing. Job was being put to a test that far exceeded any pain or hardship Satan may have been through, and used to justify his sin. Perhaps Satan told God, “You don’t know what it’s like to be human. You can always say that *you know everything*, because you’re God, and you supposedly do know everything. But you can’t truly say that – *so that I will believe it*, until you lay aside all of your power and glory, and make *yourself* lower than the angels, and walk in a man’s shoes!”

This very well could have been a real conversation that occurred between God and Satan long ago, at the conclusion of Job’s trials.

In any case, Satan was ultimately put to shame and defeated, considering what God did through His own Son, Jesus, the Christ. God the Father met the challenge Satan may have presented to Him, becoming human, walking in a man’s shoes – and doing it perfectly I might add. He, (Jesus), ended this challenge with the ultimate goal of finally ending humanities painful dilemma of sin once and for all by personally sacrificing Himself to atone for the sin of the world!

## 5. Satan’s tactics:

Throughout the dawn of time, Satan has been fighting against humanity, trying to justify his own sin by finding fault in the humans of earth. This is why he is known as the great accuser. When Satan became aware of God’s plan of salvation, he trembled in terror. He knew that if it were at all possible, he had to prevent the birth and mission of the messiah. His work toward this goal has been chronicled extensively in scripture. Chuck Missler and Mark Eastman, in their laborious biblical research, have extracted Satan’s tactics in his efforts. They are as follows: <sup>10</sup>

## **Old Testament**

1. Corruption of Adam's line – original sin. Angels inbreeding with humans:  
Genesis 6:4
2. Pollute Abraham's seed – thus, the reason Abraham had to leave his homeland:  
Genesis 6:4,12
3. Famine – thus created the need for Jacob and his children to travel to Egypt:  
Genesis 50
4. Destruction of Hebrew male line in Egypt – which Moses escaped:  
Exodus 1
5. Pharaoh's pursuit and attempt to destroy Israel:  
Exodus 14
6. Canaan populated with Giants – corrupt offspring from the Sons of God.  
Continuation of the attempt to corrupt Abraham's seed:  
Genesis 6:4
7. Giants filled the Land – presented opposition that feared Israel.  
Delayed God's plan for 40 years:  
Numbers 13:27
8. Had to fight Giants – needed God's help: Joshua,  
etc.
9. Attacks on King David's line: 2  
Samuel 7
10. Jehoram Kills his brothers: 2  
Chronicles 21
11. Arabians slew all but Ahazaria. Athalia kills all, (but Joash): 2  
Chronicles 22
12. King Hezekiah is assaulted, etc.: Isaiah  
36, 38
13. Haman's attempts: Esther  
3

## **New Testament**

1. Joseph's fears – which could've resulted in Mary's not fleeing to Egypt:  
Matthew 1
2. Herod's attempts to kill the messiah:  
Matthew 2
3. Jesus's temptation in the wilderness: Luke 4
4. Two storms on the sea: Mark 4,  
Luke 8
5. Jesus sweating blood before the crucifixion – satanic attack to prevent event: Luke  
22:44

Many take Jesus' famous quote, "*...take this cup from me...*" to be a plea from Jesus, hoping to not go to the cross. I think it could be something more. I think Jesus was under a brutal satanic attack, which was Satan's last chance to prevent the crucifixion. Perhaps His prayer was for Satan to not be successful in this attempt.

All of these attempts of Satan to prevent Jesus from completing his mission are summed up in one passage of scripture, found in the book of Revelation.

## Revelation 12:1-5

*<sup>1</sup>And there appeared a great wonder in heaven; a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars: <sup>2</sup>And she being with child cried, travailing in birth, and pained to be delivered. <sup>3</sup>And there appeared another wonder in heaven; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads. <sup>4</sup>And his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth: and the dragon stood before the woman which was ready to be delivered, for to devour her child as soon as it was born. <sup>5</sup>And she brought forth a man child, who was to rule all nations with a rod of iron: and her child was caught up unto God, and to his throne.*

Now that Jesus has been crucified, and rose from the dead, the main battle against Satan has been won. Satan is no longer able to argue with God, because he is ultimately silenced by the work of Christ. Right now, he is focusing his attention on individual believers, (Christians), all over the world, doing his best to prevent the spread of the Gospel. This began with the persecution of the early church, and has been continuing to this day. This persecution will continue to plague the humans of earth until Satan's imprisonment after the battle of Armageddon, and ultimate destruction in the lake of fire following his attack on the New Jerusalem after the millennial reign.

Within his plan of deception is the alien phenomenon. I firmly believe that we are seeing pieces of his deceptive puzzle in the alien abduction phenomenon going on today. This is the prophetic word, spoken by Jesus, about the end times returning to the days of Noah. I believe I, (among a few others), have stumbled on to a large piece of his deceptive plan, and I'm hoping this work will get into many peoples' hands.

Satan's deceptive influence spans many worlds in the heavenly realms. He is using his minions, some of which are angels, some are beings like ourselves which are from other worlds, and some are powerful spiritual beings right here on earth. A great deal of them are us, deceived, spreading false beliefs, like that of evolution. All are working together, orchestrating his grand design of deception, which is very near, even at the door.

## References

- 1 *The King James Version*, (Cambridge: Cambridge) 1769. (Note: All passages of scripture referenced from the Holy Bible in this book henceforth are taken from this source, unless specifically listed otherwise).
- 2 *The NIV Study Bible*, Zondervan Bible Publishers, Grand Rapids Michigan, 1985.
- 3 *Kennewick man*, <http://www.inetex.com/joanne/ancientgiants.htm>, 1999.
- 4 *Enhanced Strong's Lexicon*, (Oak Harbor, WA: Logos Research Systems, Inc.) 1995.
- 5 Ibid. (4)
- 6 (Tape Series: 2 tape set) Chuck Missler, *Return of the Nephilim*, 1997.
- 7 Hal Lindsey, *Planet Earth – 2000 A.D.*, Western Front, Ltd. Palos Vardes CA., 1994.
- 8 Ibid. (4)
- 9 Ibid. (6)
- 10 Ibid. (8)

## CHAPTER 5: THE HOSTS OF HEAVEN, THE STARS, AND CREATURES

Have I fully covered the definition of angels? No, not quite. While I've been providing evidence to prove that there might be humanoid angels that may be called *aliens* by modern society's definition, I haven't discussed much about any of the other types of angels.

### 1. Different types of angels:

The apostle Paul has listed several terms regarding angels, to include thrones, dominions, mights – also called virtues in some translations, powers, and principalities. These are all found in Romans 8:35-39, Colossians 1:16, and Ephesians 1:21. He also mentions archangels in 1 Thessalonians 4:16, and Jude uses the same term, archangel, referring to the archangel Michael, in Jude 1:9. All of these are New Testament terms for angels. Those found in the Old Testament, aside from the Sons of God which have already been covered in depth, are the Cherubim (Isaiah 37:15, Ezekiel 10:1,2,3, etc.), and Seraphim (Isaiah 6:2). If you can think back, I did mention the Seraphim in the last chapter. They are the magnificent angelic beings having 6 wings, 4 faces, eyes all over the place, and are surrounded by balls of fire, and bolts of lightning. They have a reputation for making humans faint.

There are probably more types of angels than those mentioned in scripture, varying in appearance, glory, power, and composition. I say this, because God likes variety. Just look at all the life forms on earth. We've always been here, and still don't even know about all the life forms we have here on earth.

The only major differences between humans and angels, is the whole issue of sex and marriage, and the level of glory. Humans are mentioned as being lower than the angels, and this is an indication that humans have a lower state of glory than angels do. Concerning sex and marriage, Jesus said angels don't marry, so it can be assumed that they don't, (*or at least shouldn't*), have sex. That's about all we know about them. Aside from these two attributes, angels could be expressions of life in innumerable ways.

It's speculative as to whether any other angels besides the Sons of God may have been created in a like manner as humans, originally having the ability to sexually reproduce, then being translated by God into a new *angelic* nature where sexual reproduction is no longer something necessary. Indeed, there may be some angels that might be hermaphrodites, capable of asexual reproduction. In such an example, said entities wouldn't marry, but would be capable of reproducing – and all without sin. Judging by the many different life forms on earth, speculation as to what kinds of angels may lie in a vast cosmos can be endless.

### 2. The Hosts of Heaven:

By now, I've already answered the question that *some* angels might be humanoids, composed of a translated physical nature, and could be considered *aliens* by modern society's definition. In fact, I've even disclosed evidence in favor of Satan himself being one of these humanoid angels. Whether he's still *physically* alive can't be proven with scripture.

What about non-human entities, such as the infamous *grays* so commonly reported in so many horrendous alien abduction accounts? The only elements missing in comparing translated humans, and aliens, are such factors as technology, differences in the states of glory, and obviously the fact that most of the descriptions of aliens given from alien abductees are those of non-humanoid entities, like the *grays*. How can these gray entities be classified, if they exist? Are they found in the Bible? I will now begin to explain what the “Hosts of Heaven” are, as described in scripture.

“Hosts”, in scripture, frequently refers to people.

#### Exodus 12:41-42

*<sup>41</sup>And it came to pass at the end of the four hundred and thirty years, even the selfsame day it came to pass, that all the hosts of the LORD went out from the land of Egypt. <sup>42</sup>It is a night to be much observed unto the LORD for bringing them out from the land of Egypt: this is that night of the LORD to be observed of all the children of Israel in their generations.*

In the example above, Israel is called the “Hosts of the Lord”. Other examples of the usage of the term “Hosts” found in scripture, referring to people, include the following: Exodus 12:41; Numbers 1:52, 2:32, 10:25; Joshua 10:5, 11:4; Judges 8:10; and numerous others. In these examples, we see that “Hosts” is a term relating to vast numbers, such as armies and nations.

Adding the suffix “*of Heaven*” to the term Hosts, we have a unique term in scripture, the term “Hosts of Heaven”. This term is even more encompassing than angels, and the Sons of God. While most instances of the “Hosts of Heaven” refer to the sun, moon, and stars, some of them refer to entities that dwell in heaven.

#### Psalms 148:1-3

*<sup>1</sup>Praise ye the LORD. Praise ye the LORD from the heavens: praise him in the heights. <sup>2</sup>Praise ye him, all his angels: praise ye him, all his hosts. <sup>3</sup>Praise ye him, sun and moon: praise him, all ye stars of light. <sup>4</sup>Praise him, ye heavens of heavens, and ye waters that be above the heavens.*

#### Nehemiah 9:6

*<sup>6</sup>Thou, even thou, art LORD alone; thou hast made heaven, the heaven of heavens, with all their host, the earth, and all things that are therein, the seas, and all that is therein, and thou preservest them all; and the host of heaven worshippeth thee.*

#### Deuteronomy 4:14-19

*<sup>14</sup>And the LORD commanded me at that time to teach you statutes and judgments, that ye might do them in the land whither ye go over to possess it. <sup>15</sup>Take ye therefore good heed unto yourselves; for ye saw no manner of similitude on the day that the LORD spake unto you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire: <sup>16</sup>Lest ye corrupt yourselves, and make you a graven image, the similitude of any figure, the likeness of male or female, <sup>17</sup>The likeness of any beast that is on the earth, the likeness of any winged fowl that flieth in the air, <sup>18</sup>The likeness of any thing that creepeth on the ground, the likeness of any fish that is in the waters beneath the earth: <sup>19</sup>And lest thou lift up thine eyes unto heaven, and when thou seest the sun, and the moon, and the stars, even all the host of heaven, shouldest be driven to worship them, and serve them, which the LORD thy God hath divided unto all nations under the whole heaven.*

#### Daniel 8:1, 9-12

*<sup>1</sup>In the third year of the reign of king Belshazzar a vision appeared unto me, even unto me Daniel, after that which appeared unto me at the first. <sup>2</sup>And I saw in a vision... <sup>9</sup>And out of one of them came forth a little horn, which waxed exceeding great, toward the south, and toward the east, and toward the pleasant land. <sup>10</sup>And it waxed great, even to the host of heaven; and it cast down some of the host and of the stars to the ground, and stamped upon them. <sup>11</sup>Yea, he magnified himself even to the prince of the host, and by him the daily sacrifice was taken away, and the place of transgression, and it cast down the truth to the ground; and it practiced and prospered.*

Psalm 148:1-3 clearly distinguishes angels from hosts, the same way it distinguishes the sun and moon from the stars. It appears that angels are ranked high within the Hosts of Heaven, just as the sun and moon are ranked higher in glory than the stars, (figuratively, because they are brighter). Nehemiah 9:6 speaks of a heaven of heavens, and all of the hosts that God created therein, and Deuteronomy 4:14-19 may be a warning against not only the worship of the sun, moon, and stars, but also the beings that dwell in the heavens. The Greeks are a testimony of the those that didn't heed this warning. They worshiped heavenly spheres, and also attributed powerful beings to them, which is an indication that fallen angels may have initiated some of this deity worship. Concerning the relationship between fallen angels and heavenly spheres, I will provide more information in the chapter on astral projection.

Daniel 8:1, 9-12 is the most fascinating of all. Right in the middle of Daniel's prophecy about the *little horn*, which many interpret to be the antichrist, he mentions that "...it (the antichrist) waxed great, even to the host of heaven; and it cast down some of the host and of the stars to the ground, and stamped upon them." To me, this clearly indicates that there will be a cosmic battle of sorts between the Hosts of Heaven, and the inhabitants of earth. The antichrist will be ruling in the earth at that time, and will be victorious in this battle. Perhaps this is how he will become so popular on a global scale.

What I already highlighted concerning what makes humans, (in our current state of development), and angels different, is that humans and angels are on different levels of glory, and humans have sex and marriage, while angels (*the faithful one's anyway*), don't. What then, do we call those entities in the universe that are on the same level of glory as humans currently are, and also reproduce sexually, just like humans currently do? In fact, of all the terms given to entities in *heaven*, what could humans currently be classified as? The answer is the Hosts of Heaven.

How do I derive this? I derive this from the fact that God, also known widely throughout scripture as the Lord of Hosts, on many occasions names us, humanity, among His *Hosts*. The only question up for debate is the term *Heaven*, which when used in the phrase "Hosts of Heaven", denotes the 2<sup>nd</sup> heaven, referring to the sun, moon, and stars; generally, outer space. (Earth is among these stars, and exists within the 2<sup>nd</sup> heaven, which will be explained more in depth in chapter 9 of this book). Taking all this in, humans, and other entities like us – which scripture states exist – are all beings that can be classified as the Hosts of Heaven.

From the scriptures defining this term, this title can be applied to humans in any state of glory, as well as animals. In fact, it can be applied to all living entities in *the heavens*. The Hosts of Heaven is one of the broadest terms in scripture referring to God's created entities, and it encompasses both angels, and all other entities within various stages of glory, (except those in hell), including those that sexually reproduce. Therefore one can call an angel a member of the Hosts of Heaven, but the opposite is not true; not all of the Hosts of Heaven can be considered angels. Humans in their current state of development, for instance, are not considered angels, because we have sex and marriage, and are mentioned as being lower than the angels. We can though, justifiably be termed, Hosts of Heaven.

What value does this term, Hosts of Heaven, leave us with? It leaves us with some scriptural references that might indicate that there are other entities in the universe



that may not be confined to the strict definition applied to angels; entities that sexually reproduce as a natural biological function; entities that are lower in glory than the angels are. In fact, they (many of the Hosts of Heaven) probably have some form of sexual reproduction, (except, possibly, for non-physical beings), because most (the only exception being asexual single celled creatures) of the biological life forms on earth do. This would especially hold true concerning entities that aren't immortal. They would have to reproduce, in order to continue existing.

Being more similar to humanity, it's likely that these entities, at least the physical ones with high intelligence, are more likely to need the aid of technology, just like humans. After all, technology is the natural result of intelligent expression in the physical universe.

### 3. Non-physical life forms that aren't angels:

Perhaps not all the non-angelic Hosts of Heaven are strictly physical in nature. Perhaps some are purely spiritual; case in point – a curious flashing ball of light that might, for instance, live in the jungles of Panama... Of the *spiritual* entities that may exist that are not classified as high as the angels, *for the most part*, they remain undetected by humanity due to the fact that our physical nature, and science is not capable of detecting them. (I will provide more information on disincarnate entities in chapter eight of this book, which is dedicated to non-physical life forms.)

### 4. Physical life forms that aren't angels:

As for physical entities, some are most likely gray, telepathic, have large bug-like eyes, and have a bad habit of abducting the humans of earth. (It's doubtful that the grays are physical life forms that *aren't* angels though, because they are probably *fallen* angels. While fallen angels may have lost some power in their fall, they probably still have more power than those entities that haven't reached angelic status yet.) Now why would I classify grays as fallen angels, since they depend so heavily upon technology?

#### 4.1 The issue of technology – do God's faithful angels use technology?

Concerning technology, it's logical to assume that angels wouldn't need it. Angels usually just wave their hands, or speak, and things happen. Recall from the previous chapter some of the abilities that I mentioned angels having. Aside from the mass destruction of armies and cities (Sodom and Gomorrah), angels are noted for their ability to fly (Matthew 28:2, Revelation 14:6), teleport (Acts 5:19-23), deliver messages in person (or *angel*, if you will), and psychically in dreams (Luke 1:13, Matthew 1:20, Genesis 31:11). Angels can also bless people with healing (John 5:2-6), curse people with blindness (Genesis 19:1-3), muteness (Luke 1:20), and make people faint (Matthew 28:2). If angels can fly and teleport, then why would they need spacecraft to transport them from one location to another? If angels can heal by touch, then why would they need medical technology? If angels can make people mute by speaking, and blind by waving their hands, why would they need technological weapons to defend themselves? In these scriptures, technology appears to be absent.

It's my feeling that since God spoke the universe into existence by His *word*, He imbues this power to make *word* reality to His angels. This same power is given to humans on a lesser scale, through Holy Spirit inspired *prayer*. (See the section on *thought-forms* in chapter 8 of this book regarding this power). Even Christ is called *The Word made flesh*. With such power, why would angels need technology? That's why I say that it's a logical assumption to make that angels probably don't need technology.

Now that I've given strong arguments against angels using technology, I'm forced to turn around, and point out a few scriptures that seem to indicate that angels do, in fact, use technology.

## 2 Kings 2:11-12

<sup>11</sup>*And it came to pass, as they still went on, and talked, that, behold, there appeared a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, and parted them both asunder; and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven.*

<sup>12</sup>*And Elisha saw it, and he cried, My father, my father, the chariot of Israel, and the horsemen thereof. And he saw him no more: and he took hold of his own clothes, and rent them in two pieces.*

## Acts 8:38-40

<sup>39</sup>*And when they were come up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord caught away Philip, that the eunuch saw him no more: and he went on his way rejoicing.* <sup>40</sup>*But Philip was found at Azotus: and passing through he preached in all the cities, till he came to Caesarea.*

The incident in Acts 8:38 looks very reminiscent of what happened in 2 Kings, and that's why I'm referencing it, though I can't say for sure that Philip's teleportation was done using a chariot of fire. I don't want to forget about Enoch either. Scripture states that he was taken away into heaven and never saw death, though it doesn't mention that a chariot of fire took him away.

I used to believe that only fallen angels or members of the Hosts of Heaven that aren't angels were the only ones that used technology, because they would be the only ones that would depend on it. I was forced to reanalyze this believe when I received an interesting email from someone who read my web site, and offered a scriptural rebuttal to my assumption that God's angels most likely don't use technology. This person elaborated on the incident in 2 Kings.

In 2 Kings 2:11-12, the first thing to note is that scripture points out that Elija was taken up by a whirlwind upon the arrival of the chariot. This indicates a beam of some sort that lifted him off his feet, and took him away. This is reminiscent of many UFO encounters, where UFOs are reported to shoot out beams of energy that take whatever they hit off the ground and up inside them.

Other information to glean from this scripture becomes apparent when looking up the original Hebrew text. Using Strong's Exhaustive Concordance, the original Hebrew meaning for "Chariot" is "Vehicle", and the meaning for "Fire" is exactly that, "Fire". Concerning the "Horses of fire", the meaning for Horses is interesting. "Horses" has the root meaning "To skip", as in skipping for joy, or in reference to a *swallow (bird) in flight*.<sup>1</sup>

From these Hebrew roots, we can see that horses may not even be present. Elisha is probably using the word horse for its root meaning, which describes more an action, than it does an animal. Since Elisha has never seen anything other than a bird fly, he describes what he sees as something similar to the flight of a swallow. As for the "Horsemen" he mentions, they refer to "Drivers", which are obviously behind whatever is skipping around in flight.

To re-read 2 Kings 2:11-12 with these Hebrew meanings, we have the following: “And it came to pass, as they still went on, and talked, that, behold, there appeared a VEHICLE of FIRE, and FIRE THAT WAS SKIPPING AND LEAPING AROUND, and parted them both asunder; and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven. And Elisha saw it, and he cried, My father, my father, the VEHICLE of Israel, and the DRIVERS thereof. And he saw him no more: and he took hold of his own clothes, and rent them in two pieces.” This incident sounds very descriptive of an encounter with a UFO. (In this case, it is an IFO, because Eliza *identifies* it as the vehicle of Israel.)

Concerning this mysterious chariot of fire, Ezekiel’s description of the vision of what he called the throne of God, found in Ezekiel 1:1-28, is also very interesting. I take peculiar note of the wheels following the Seraphim in his vision. In Ezekiel chapters 1, and 10, Ezekiel describes in depth something awesome, and nearly impossible to get a clear picture of. Ezekiel’s vision may very well give more insight into the chariots of fire found in 2 Kings. I’m referencing the whole of chapter 1, because there’s too much information that will be missed if only portions are referenced.

#### Ezekiel 1:1-28

<sup>1</sup>Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year, in the fourth month, in the fifth day of the month, as I was among the captives by the river of Chebar, that the heavens were opened, and I saw visions of God. <sup>2</sup>In the fifth day of the month, which was the fifth year of king Jehoiachin’s captivity, <sup>3</sup>The word of the LORD came expressly unto Ezekiel the priest, the son of Buzi, in the land of the Chaldeans by the river Chebar; and the hand of the LORD was there upon him. <sup>4</sup>And I looked, and, behold, a whirlwind came out of the north, a great cloud, and a fire infolding itself, and a brightness was about it, and out of the midst thereof as the colour of amber, out of the midst of the fire. <sup>5</sup>Also out of the midst thereof came the likeness of four living creatures. And this was their appearance; they had the likeness of a man. <sup>6</sup>And every one had four faces, and every one had four wings. <sup>7</sup>And their feet were straight feet; and the sole of their feet was like the sole of a calf’s foot: and they sparkled like the colour of burnished brass. <sup>8</sup>And they had the hands of a man under their wings on their four sides; and they four had their faces and their wings. <sup>9</sup>Their wings were joined one to another; they turned not when they went; they went every one straight forward. <sup>10</sup>As for the likeness of their faces, they four had the face of a man, and the face of a lion, on the right side: and they four had the face of an ox on the left side; they four also had the face of an eagle. <sup>11</sup>Thus were their faces: and their wings were stretched upward; two wings of every one were joined one to another, and two covered their bodies. <sup>12</sup>And they went every one straight forward: whither the spirit was to go, they went; and they turned not when they went. <sup>13</sup>As for the likeness of the living creatures, their appearance was like burning coals of fire, and like the appearance of lamps: it went up and down among the living creatures; and the fire was bright, and out of the fire went forth lightning. <sup>14</sup>And the living creatures ran and returned as the appearance of a flash of lightning. <sup>15</sup>Now as I beheld the living creatures, behold one wheel upon the earth by the living creatures, with his four faces. <sup>16</sup>The appearance of the wheels and their work was like unto the colour of a beryl: and they four had one likeness: and their appearance and their work was as it were a wheel in the middle of a wheel. <sup>17</sup>When they went, they went upon their four sides: and they turned not when they went. <sup>18</sup>As for their rings, they were so high that they were dreadful; and their rings were full of eyes round about them four. <sup>19</sup>And when the living creatures went, the wheels went by them: and when the living creatures were lifted up from the earth, the wheels were lifted up. <sup>20</sup>Whithersoever the spirit was to go, they went, thither was their spirit to go; and the wheels were lifted up over against them: for the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels. <sup>21</sup>When those went, these went; and when those stood, these stood; and when those were lifted up from the earth, the wheels were lifted up over against them: for the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels. <sup>22</sup>And the likeness of the firmament upon the heads of the living creature was as the colour of the terrible crystal, stretched forth over their heads above. <sup>23</sup>And under the firmament were their wings straight, the one toward the other: every one had two, which covered on this side, and every one had two, which covered on that side, their bodies. <sup>24</sup>And when they went, I heard the noise of their wings, like the noise of great waters, as the voice of the Almighty, the voice of speech, as

*the noise of an host: when they stood, they let down their wings.<sup>25</sup> And there was a voice from the firmament that was over their heads, when they stood, and had let down their wings.<sup>26</sup> And above the firmament that was over their heads was the likeness of a throne, as the appearance of a sapphire stone: and upon the likeness of the throne was the likeness as the appearance of a man above upon it.<sup>27</sup> And I saw as the colour of amber, as the appearance of fire round about within it, from the appearance of his loins even upward, and from the appearance of his loins even downward, I saw as it were the appearance of fire, and it had brightness round about.<sup>28</sup> As the appearance of the bow that is in the cloud in the day of rain, so was the appearance of the brightness round about. This was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of the LORD. And when I saw it, I fell upon my face, and I heard a voice of one that spake.*

Now what was that all about? I bet he stuttered when he tried to explain this vision to people. Most people would sum such a vision up in one word: “Indescribable”. But Ezekiel is an articulate man, and I commend him. The information in Ezekiel chapter 10 is essentially the same as chapter 1, with the exception of one of the faces on the Seraphim. Instead of one of the four faces being an ox, it’s described as being a Cherub. The only significance I can attribute to this discrepancy is that whatever he’s looking at, it’s hard for him to classify. Perhaps later in the vision he noticed more similarities between the Seraphim’s face and the face of the Cherub, so he simply called it a Cherub’s face instead of an ox’s face.

While I have a hard time getting a mental image of what he’s trying to explain, I can point out a few phrases that catch my attention.

1. “...the colour of amber, out of the midst of the fire”. Amber is a glowing orange yellow color – a color possibly exhibited by something very hot, such as the engine of an intergalactic vehicle, or powerful technological device.

2. “...And their feet were straight feet; and the sole of their feet was like the sole of a calf’s foot: and they sparkled like the colour of burnished brass.” Could these be landing pads perhaps?

3. “...Their wings were joined one to another; they turned not when they went; they went every one straight forward.” How might someone describe a device capable of flight, had that person never seen anything fly except for birds? He would most likely associate wings with what he thought gave such a device its ability to fly. Here, we see four wings joined together; wings that don’t turn, and don’t flap. It sounds to me like he could be describing the paneling, or arms with rocket boosters on the outside of a four sided spacecraft.

4. “...and their wings were stretched upward; two wings of every one were joined one to another, and two covered their bodies.<sup>12</sup> And they went every one straight forward: whither the spirit was to go, they went; and they turned not when they went.” He’s mentioning two sets of wings. One set is joined, and the other set is covering their bodies. I can’t tell if he means both sets of wings are stretched upward, or just one set. I also can’t tell if the wings covering their bodies are connected, either. Perhaps one set of wings are connected arms with rocket boosters, or paneling covering a surface vertical to the ground. Maybe the other wings are paneling covering the top of the craft, or other appendages he’s attributing the ability of flight to, thus, calling them wings.

5. “<sup>13</sup>As for the likeness of the living creatures, their appearance was like burning coals of fire, and like the appearance of lamps: it went up and down among the living creatures; and the fire was bright, and out of the fire went forth lightning.<sup>14</sup> And the living creatures ran and returned as the appearance of a flash of lightning.” Here we see

burning coals, lamps, bright fire, and lightning. These all indicate to me that whatever it was that he was seeing, it had lots of bright flashing lights, and serious amounts of energy emissions. These are typical of UFOs. Furthermore, this being, or thing, or whatever it was, is running and returning. What does this mean? Was it moving all over the place? Could he be describing its movement prior to its landing?

6. “<sup>15</sup>Now as I beheld the living creatures, behold one wheel upon the earth by the living creatures, with his four faces. <sup>16</sup>The appearance of the wheels and their work was like unto the colour of a beryl: (yellow) and they four had one likeness: and their appearance and their work was as it were a wheel in the middle of a wheel. <sup>17</sup>When they went, they went upon their four sides: and they turned not when they went. <sup>18</sup>As for their rings, they were so high that they were dreadful; and their rings were full of eyes round about them four. <sup>19</sup>And when the living creatures went, the wheels went by them: and when the living creatures were lifted up from the earth, the wheels were lifted up.

<sup>20</sup>Whithersoever the spirit was to go, they went, thither was their spirit to go; and the wheels were lifted up over against them: for the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels.” Here we have wheels within wheels, which are a yellowish color. Does it not appear odd that a living being would have the shape of a wheel? The wheels he describes sound more like transportation devices, than they do appendages, such as arms, or legs.

Notice that he mentions that *when they went, they went upon their four sides*. While most people wouldn’t classify a wheel as having four sides, Ezekiel does. This insight further helps to develop a mental description of the entire craft, (if it is one), because Ezekiel earlier mentions the entire being, or craft, as having four sides. With these clues, one could gather that the entire being, which is composed of four beings connected together by their wings, is round, just like the wheels are – just like a flying saucer.

Another interesting thing to note is that when the craft, or entity lifted off the ground, the wheels retracted, just like what might be expected of a flying craft with retractable landing pads, wheels, or whatever it may use to land with.

7. “<sup>21</sup>When those went, these went; and when those stood, these stood; and when those were lifted up from the earth, the wheels were lifted up over against them...” Again, Ezekiel describes the wheels as retracting.

8. “<sup>22</sup>And the likeness of the firmament upon the heads of the living creature was as the colour of the terrible crystal, stretched forth over their heads above.” Now Ezekiel is saying that there was a crystal over the heads of the four living creatures. Could this be a glass bubble? Many UFOs are described as having a glass bubble on top.

9. “<sup>24</sup>And when they went, I heard the noise of their wings, like the noise of great waters, as the voice of the Almighty, the voice of speech, as the noise of an host: when they stood, they let down their wings.” Finally, typical of a flying craft, it creates a very loud noise, like great waters; a noise similar to a rocket blasting off. When it lands, it lets down its wheels, and drops its wings.

Further down in Ezekiel’s vision, Ezekiel describes being taken up by this being, or these beings, or maybe taken inside of a spacecraft, if it is one.

#### Ezekiel 2:12-14

<sup>12</sup>Then the spirit took me up, and I heard behind me a voice of a great rushing, saying, Blessed be the glory of the LORD from his place. <sup>13</sup>I heard also the noise of the wings of the living creatures that touched one another, and the noise of the wheels over against them, and a noise of a great rushing. <sup>14</sup>So

*the spirit lifted me up, and took me away, and I went in bitterness, in the heat of my spirit; but the hand of the LORD was strong upon me.*

While some of this scripture gives information supporting the possibility of the use of technology, it should be noted that this vision is what Ezekiel interprets to be the throne of God. I seriously doubt God's throne is a spacecraft! If a spacecraft is actually used by these beings, it would have to open up a dimensional portal that viewed into the throne room of God, or project an image of the throne room of God to Ezekiel. There would have to be a logical explanation. The prospect that God Himself, Creator of all things, would *need* technology for anything, is utterly absurd.

There are also other elements that Ezekiel adds which make this vision more confusing if trying to prove that what he's seeing is a spacecraft. How, for instance, can a spacecraft have hands, faces, and act as beings might. For example, one of these beings grabs a piece of coal and hands it to a man. Also, what kind of spacecraft has eyes all over it?

Maybe the eyes are lights within lights, or maybe these are symbolic images indicating that these beings are capable of omniscient sight; I've heard both arguments. I truly don't know. I have the strange feeling that concerning visions in general, everything is symbolic, but often the symbolism is intertwined with literal events, or things which are physically real. The temple of the Lord, for instance, was a real temple, but not one minute fragment of the temple could be pointed out that didn't have symbolic reference to Christ. If an actual spacecraft were used by angels, it may very well be that it was designed with symbolic components and artistry, such that describing it would bring out symbolic testimony pointing to Christ. This would be a logical assumption. Look at the flying craft of today. They are often marked with symbols. Fighter jets sometimes have eyes, nose, and mouths with jagged teeth painted on them. Other jets have pictures drawn on their tails, symbols indicating their national or commercial affiliation, and other such markings.

In any case, these passages of scripture may very well indicate that some angels might use technology to serve God's purposes, as bizarre as that may sound. 1 Chronicles 28:18 also lends more support to the possible use of space craft by angels.

#### 1 Chronicles 28:18

<sup>18</sup>*And for the altar of incense refined gold by weight; and gold for the pattern of the chariot of the cherubims, that spread out their wings, and covered the ark of the covenant of the LORD.*

This passage of scripture links the Cherubim with a chariot. (*When the ark of the covenant is uncovered, I'll be curious to see what this chariot looks like, which this scripture above states has its pattern somehow inscribed on it...*) I consider this link significant, because it links angels with a vehicle, and adds to the possibility that part of what Ezekiel describes in his vision might be a chariot – of sorts. When I think of Ezekiel's description of the beings in his vision, I'm reminded of how early Native American's described mounted Spanish soldiers. I heard somewhere that the natives described them as two headed beasts, viewing both soldier and steed as one entity. I wouldn't think it unlikely that Ezekiel might have done this to some degree, viewing both angelic entities and their space craft as one entity.

Scripture also gives numerous accounts of other possible UFO activity in the form

of peculiar clouds from which God and His angels operate, and fire in the skies at night. One should be careful when analyzing these scriptures. It's important not to mix God up, thinking of Him as nothing more than a hoax contrived by aliens to suit their purposes. This deception is very powerful, and will capture many. The following verses will undoubtedly be used to support these claims: Exodus 14:19, 14:24, 31:21-22, 33:9-10, 40:34; Numbers 12:5, 14:14, 16:42; Daniel 1:33; Nehemiah 9:12, 9:19; Psalms 99:7; Isaiah 4:5, 19:1; Habakkuk 3:8; Matthew 17:5; Luke 21:27; and Revelation 11:12.

Perhaps some angels need technology, while others don't. Perhaps technology is only used because of humanities physical limitations – i.e., Ezekiel's physical body needed such a vehicle in order to withstand the forces subjected to him while being transported from place to place. Only God knows these things. One thing I know for sure though; the angels in Ezekiel's vision were God's faithful angels, giving glory to God, and doing His work. As for the many scriptures devoted to peculiar clouds of glory, and fires in the night sky, we can rest assured that these are from God. Scripture attributes them to God and His angels. When mentioned, they are always surrounded by the purposes of God. They certainly weren't ascribed to entities taking semen samples, and subjecting anyone to horrible physical examinations and medical experiments, as we hear reports of the aliens of today doing.

#### 4.2 The issue of technology – do fallen angels use technology?

Fallen angels are easier than God's faithful angels to classify as beings dependent upon technology. Would it not be logical to assume that after falling, they might resort to technology to make up for the power they lost from their fall in glory?

There would most likely be a difference though, in the technology exhibited by entities that haven't reached angelic status, and the technology developed by fallen angels. Personally, I think technology developed by fallen angels would far surpass that of lower life forms, for two reasons: 1. Fallen angels, once being transcendent of the physical universe, have more knowledge concerning the properties of the physical universe. This intimate knowledge of the physical universe gives them a stark advantage over those entities that haven't experienced existence in a transcendent state. 2. Fallen angels, if they were once lower life forms, could easily pick up the pieces of any technology they may have left when they were translated. Such technology would probably be very sophisticated, considering the fact that it existed within the hands of a civilization that developed to the degree that God decided to translate it to angelic status.

#### 4.3 Alien abductors – probably fallen angels:

Judging by the reported terrifying, uncaring actions of these gray bug-like entities, among other aliens that have abducted humans, and also from the many emails I've received about them, I'm fairly certain that they (those abducting humans) are highly associated with Satan. I've received about 5 email reports so far about abductions by the entities known as *grays*. These abductions were abruptly cut short when the abducted individuals (Christians in these cases) called upon the name of the Lord Jesus Christ. (*The grays got out of Dodge...*) This is a powerful indication of just exactly how much is being held back from the world, by the restraining power of the Holy Spirit. Seeing that

these entities feared the name of Jesus Christ, it should be reasonable to assume that they are utterly satanic. They obviously believe in Jesus, but it's a *reverse* faith. Scripture states that devils believe on the name of Jesus, and tremble with terror concerning Him, (James 2:19), and this is what I'm referring to.

James 2:19

*<sup>19</sup>Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble.*

These entities are exhibiting the same behavior as devils! If they didn't believe in Jesus, then they would be like most atheist and agnostic humans are, who often blasphemy the name of God without any fear of retribution whatsoever.

#### 5. The balance of technological and spiritual development:

Email accounts are speculative, and could be the results of active imaginations, or even schizophrenia, as convincing and sincere though they may be. Aside from the email I get, further indication that the *grays*, among the other life forms reported to abduct humans, are more likely to be fallen angels, and not others among the Hosts of Heaven like ourselves, is the degree of advancement found in their technology. From humanities current knowledge of the physical universe, it simply doesn't seem technologically probable that aliens similar to ourselves are coming from other worlds in the universe, because the nearest star, Alpha Centari, is 4.5 light-years away. Even traveling at 10 million miles per day, it would take about 7000 years to reach earth, from the *nearest* star!<sup>2</sup> Why go all that way for a few abductions, then leave?

It would appear that all those visiting earth by technological means must have obviously devised a method of either traveling much faster than the speed of light, (something astrophysicists state isn't possible), or are warping the space-time continuum, and teleporting from one area in the universe to another. While it might be possible for technology this advanced to be attainable by entities that aren't yet angels, I think it's a reasonable conclusion to assume that this would be highly unlikely. Entities should develop spiritually along with their technological advancement, because without moral guidance and submission to God, technological advancement is very dangerous. I don't think it would be God's will for a species to develop technologically to the point that they may reach other species in the universe, without keeping that technological advancement in check with said species spiritual development. Concerning technology advanced to the magnitude that intergalactic travel is possible, entities containing such knowledge should be godly beings, loving, and giving glory to God. Is this what we see in the experiences usually described by abductees?

In most cases, encounters involving abduction experiences are always entities whose actions aren't even as ethical as humanities. The imbalance of technological development compared to spiritual development is extreme in the case of those entities that abduct humans and subject them to cruel medical examinations. When analyzing abduction experiences, it becomes clear that there is something obviously wrong with the ethics of these alien beings.

#### 6. Difficult to classify technology between entities:



The area of technological advancement is a very gray area. Exactly what is the level of technological advancement where one draws the line – and calls that technology angelic? Indeed, the possibility of a race of fallen angels passing knowledge on to a species not yet translated to angelic status yet may also be the case with some entities technological advancement. In such cases, determining the origin of technology among the Hosts of Heaven can be very difficult. Consider the famous Roswell crash; an incident of a reported flying saucer crashing in Roswell New Mexico.<sup>3</sup> According to reports, an alien craft was apprehended by the U.S. military, and a great deal of technological advancement was gleaned from this intergalactic vehicle. In this case, humans may have obtained knowledge created by fallen angels.

Being a member of the Air Force National Guard, I've happened upon a few individuals that have worked in classified areas. Each had stories most people have heard about. During my technical training in Keesler AFB., Mississippi, I met a guy that said he worked in a place where they had experimental air craft where the engine designs were so powerful, no frame could be built that would be capable of testing them to their fullest capacity. There was a stark degree of advancement in engine design, as opposed to other technology that should complement it. He was convinced that the specifications for their engine designs weren't of human origin.

Similar incidents of advanced technology falling into the hands of less advanced species could also occur with other members of the Hosts of Heaven, found throughout the universe. These incidents may not only be accidents like what happened at Roswell, but could even be planned, where fallen angels might provide the payment of technology for a particular purchase, in order to obtain something desirable from a lower species. Fallen angels could also just give dangerously powerful technology to lower species, simply for the joy of disrupting the balance of development for the said species. Such incidents place technology into the hands of certain species that aren't ready for it, thus, disrupting the balance of technological and spiritual development.

An illustration of the exchange of technology for goods is found in early America. Consider the fact that guns were sold to Indians in early America for items such as furs, gold, and slaves. One could argue that these trades placed a heavy imbalance of power in favor of some tribes over others, and created a host of problems among the Indian tribes. War, death, and destruction, were often the results of technological advancement. Humanity the way it is now is not balanced, considering the fact that the greatest technological advancements made are always snatched up by military powers first, and geared toward destruction.

## 7. God's intervention in the balance of technological and spiritual development:

Genesis 11:1-9 is a scripture that might bare relevance to the spiritual and technological balance that should exist within the development of species. It may also bare relevance to the reason why the humans of earth aren't in *open* contact with other species of the Hosts of Heaven in the universe.

Genesis 11:1-9

<sup>1</sup>And the whole earth was of one language, and of one speech. <sup>2</sup>And it came to pass, as they journeyed from the east, that they found a plain in the land of Shinar; and they dwelt there. <sup>3</sup>And they said one to another, Go to, let us make brick, and burn them thoroughly. And they had brick for stone, and slime

*had they for mortar. <sup>4</sup>And they said, Go to, let us build us a city and a tower, whose top may reach unto heaven; and let us make us a name, lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth. <sup>5</sup>And the LORD came down to see the city and the tower, which the children of men built. <sup>6</sup>And the LORD said, Behold, the people is one, and they have all one language; and this they begin to do: and now nothing will be restrained from them, which they have imagined to do. <sup>7</sup>Go to, let us go down, and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another's speech. <sup>8</sup>So the LORD scattered them abroad from thence upon the face of all the earth: and they left off to build the city. <sup>9</sup>Therefore is the name of it called Babel; because the LORD did there confound the language of all the earth: and from thence did the LORD scatter them abroad upon the face of all the earth.*

In this scripture, we begin with a people that have gathered together to make a city, and a tower. These people set out to make a name for themselves, and the tower they were going to make was to reach into heaven. One thing is basically evident in this passage of scripture; *man got too big for his own britches*, as my great grandmother Thelma might say. These were a people overweening with pride, and it appears that they were attaining knowledge so fast, it wasn't healthy. Their accumulation of knowledge filled them with pride, and furthermore, it may have even been too dangerous for them to keep attaining knowledge at the exponential rate at which they were attaining it.

In this scripture, God intervenes, and destroys the language of this civilization. Why? Because God states that nothing could be kept from these people. This statement by God indicates that there are things that *should* be kept from them; things that could lead to enormous sin, probably. I think there was a lot more going on here in this passage of scripture than most people think, but in order not to repeat myself, I will simply state that this information is covered again in the chapter of this book devoted to the topic of astral projection.

## 8. The Stars:

Now that I've discussed the term, "Hosts of Heaven", I would now like to discuss another biblical term that defines entities – the Stars. Stars, and the Hosts of Heaven, are basically synonymous terms. While the term Stars may refer to the same entities as the Hosts of Heaven, elaborating on references to this term will provide more information on entities in the cosmos that aren't necessarily classified as angels.

In the Bible, references to Stars are used in all three ways that references to the term Hosts are used; large numbers, celestial bodies, and symbolic representations of entities. Usually the term stars applies to literal stars, but sometimes it refers to people, or entities.

### 8.1 The Twelve Stars – Stars referring to people:

The exact terms, sun, moon, and stars, are used in conjunction in several places in scripture. There is an interesting parallel between some of these references. I will take Joseph's vision in Genesis, and John's vision in Revelation, as examples.

#### Genesis 37:9-11

*<sup>9</sup>And he dreamed yet another dream, and told it his brethren, and said, Behold, I have dreamed a dream more; and, behold, the sun and the moon and the eleven stars made obeisance to me. <sup>10</sup>And he told it to his father, and to his brethren: and his father rebuked him, and said unto him, What is this dream that thou hast dreamed? Shall I and thy mother and thy brethren indeed come to bow down ourselves to thee to*

the earth? <sup>11</sup>And his brethren envied him; but his father observed the saying.

#### Revelation 12:1-2

<sup>1</sup>And there appeared a great wonder in heaven; a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars: <sup>2</sup>And she being with child cried, travailing in birth, and pained to be delivered.

In both these scriptures, the sun may refer to the patriarch Jacob, the moon, Rachael, and the twelve stars, the patriarchal ancestors of the twelve tribes of Israel. In Joseph's dream, there were eleven stars bowing to him, but this is because he was one of the stars, and thus didn't see himself as bowing to himself – obviously.

John's vision probably contains all the symbolic references that Joseph's dream did – i.e., the sun, moon, and stars may refer to the patriarchs. But John's dream also contains additional meaning, adding the elements of the woman, and the child. Taking these new elements into consideration, the sun may also be God the Father, the moon – the Holy Spirit, and the child is Christ. The woman is usually interpreted to be the church, yet, some call her Israel, (one in the same, in a spiritual sense). As for the stars, they may either be the patriarchs, or the twelve apostles of Christ. In both of these references, the stars are symbols of people.

#### 8.2 Stars referring to the Hosts of Heaven:

In Daniel 8:10-12, Matthew 24:15, 29-31, Luke 21:24-28, and Revelation 12:3-5, the stars represent all those hosts of heaven, (not all of them are necessarily angels), that will be cast unto the earth. I don't limit the stars exclusively to mean angels, particularly because Daniel refers to them once as the hosts of heaven, then as stars, thus linking these two terms together.

All of these scriptures are prophetic, and indicate cosmic battles in earth's near future, as I previously mentioned when referencing various scriptures about the Hosts of Heaven. They all most likely are portraying the same event that is to come.

While Daniel, Matthew, and Luke mention that these entities arrival will be highly distressful, they don't indicate if there will be any *good guys* among them. Daniel hints at it, mentioning that they are at war with an antichrist figure, but this could simply be evil – *or at least deceived* – entities squabbling among each other.

In any case, Revelation specifically mentions that these entities will only be arriving because Satan deceived them. When he was cast out of the highest heaven, they were cast out with him, thrown to earth along with him, symbolized by his tail dragging them out as he went. Those that were cast out equate to one third of the inhabitants of the heavens. Whether any of them are saved, (*by Jesus*), is another question – the fact remains though; their presence will be part of Satan's strategy of deception.

#### Daniel 8:7-12

<sup>10</sup>And it (the antichrist) waxed great, even to the host of heaven; and it cast down some of the host and of the stars to the ground, and stamped upon them. <sup>11</sup>Yea, he magnified himself even to the prince of the host, and by him the daily sacrifice was taken away, and the place of his sanctuary was cast down. <sup>12</sup>And an host was given him against the daily sacrifice by reason of transgression, and it cast down the truth to the ground; and it practised, and prospered.

#### Matthew 24:15-31

<sup>15</sup>When ye therefore shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet,

*stand in the holy place, (whoso readeth, let him understand:)...<sup>29</sup>Immediately after the tribulation of those days shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken: <sup>30</sup>And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory. <sup>31</sup>And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.*  
Luke 21:24-28

*<sup>24</sup>And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled. <sup>25</sup>And there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth distress of nations, with perplexity; the sea and the waves roaring; <sup>26</sup>Men's hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth: for the powers of heaven shall be shaken. <sup>27</sup>And then shall they see the Son of man coming in a cloud with power and great glory. <sup>28</sup>And when these things begin to come to pass, then look up, and lift up your heads; for your redemption draweth nigh.*

#### Revelation 12:3-5

*<sup>3</sup>And there appeared another wonder in heaven; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads. <sup>4</sup>And his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth: and the dragon stood before the woman which was ready to be delivered, for to devour her child as soon as it was born.*

#### 8.3 Stars referring specifically to angels:

Finally, there are Stars that refer specifically to angelic entities. Of all the references specifically pertaining to angels, they are usually in reference to those angels that are faithful to God. These scriptures include Job 38:4-7, where we find the “Sons of God” again, in a good light, giving glory to God. Revelation 1:15-20 also refers to good angels, those that are assigned to particular churches.

#### Job 38:4-7

*<sup>4</sup>Where wast thou when I laid the foundations of the earth? declare, if thou hast understanding. <sup>5</sup>Who hath laid the measures thereof, if thou knowest? or who hath stretched the line upon it? <sup>6</sup>Whereupon are the foundations thereof fastened? or who laid the corner stone thereof; <sup>7</sup>When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?*

#### Revelation 1:15-20

*<sup>15</sup>And his feet like unto fine brass, as if they burned in a furnace; and his voice as the sound of many waters. <sup>16</sup>And he had in his right hand seven stars: ... And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; I am the first and the last: <sup>18</sup>I am he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death. <sup>19</sup>Write the things which thou hast seen, and the things which are, and the things which shall be hereafter; <sup>20</sup>The mystery of the seven stars which thou sawest in my right hand, and the seven golden candlesticks. The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches: and the seven candlesticks which thou sawest are the seven churches.*

From all of these passages, it should be clear that the term Stars may refer to both humans, and angels. Since this term includes humans and angels, and it's basically synonymous with the term Hosts of Heaven, it's scope may be expanded to those entities in the universe that aren't necessarily angels, but aren't particularly native inhabitants of earth, either.

#### 9. Creatures in scripture:

So far, I've elaborated on two terms that refer to beings from the heavens – or

*other worlds* – that aren't necessarily angels; the *Hosts of Heaven*, and the *Stars*. Now I will elaborate upon yet another term found in scripture, which in fact may refer to angelic beings, humans, and other entities, even including animals. This term is, which should be obvious because of the heading of this section, is *Creatures*.

This term is mentioned throughout scripture. Usually it refers to animals, such as in Genesis 1:20-24, but sometimes is applied to humans, found in Mark 16:15, and 2 Corinthians 5:17, and even angels, as described in Ezekiel chapters 1 and 10, which I've already elaborated upon in depth. As for Revelation 5:13-14, creatures may be applied to all of the aforementioned, to include angels, beings lower than the angels, such as humans, and also animals.

#### Genesis 1:20-24 (Creatures as animals)

<sup>20</sup>And God said, *Let the waters bring forth abundantly the moving creature that hath life, and fowl that may fly above the earth in the open firmament of heaven.* <sup>21</sup>And God created great whales, and every living creature that moveth, which the waters brought forth abundantly, after their kind, and every winged fowl after his kind: and God saw that it was good. <sup>22</sup>And God blessed them, saying, *Be fruitful, and multiply, and fill the waters in the seas, and let fowl multiply in the earth.* <sup>23</sup>And the evening and the morning were the fifth day. <sup>24</sup>And God said, *Let the earth bring forth the living creature after his kind, cattle, and creeping thing, and beast of the earth after his kind: and it was so.*

#### Mark 16:15-16 (Creatures as humans)

<sup>15</sup>And he said unto them, *Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.* <sup>16</sup>He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.

#### 2 Corinthians 5:17 (Creatures as humans)

<sup>17</sup>Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.

#### Ezekiel 1:5-7 (Creatures as angels)

<sup>5</sup>Also out of the midst thereof came the likeness of four living creatures. And this was their appearance; they had the likeness of a man. <sup>6</sup>And every one had four faces, and every one had four wings. <sup>7</sup>And their feet were straight feet; and the sole of their feet was like the sole of a calf's foot: and they sparkled like the colour of burnished brass.

#### Revelation 5:13-14 (Creatures as angels, humans, and animals)

<sup>13</sup>And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I saying, *Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever.*

From these scriptures, we can see that the term *Creatures* is used when referring to entities that may be angels, humans or other similarly classified intelligent life forms, or even animals. I find the reference to creatures in Revelation 5:13-14 to be the most interesting, because this broad term which is used throughout scripture to represent *all* life forms is used when referring to the life forms which dwell in *heaven*. One could easily say that the reference to creatures dwelling in heaven is a reference to the angels dwelling there, but I don't think it's any accident that a broader term than angels was used. I think the term *creatures* was used specifically to indicate that there is a vast assortment of life in *heaven*. Concerning the term *heaven*, there is more to be elaborated upon – again, read about that in Chapter 9 of this book.

One last interesting note about this particular passage of scripture is that it mentions the fact that all creatures give glory to God; this includes even animals. Can you imagine that one day, your cats, dogs, hamsters, and whatever other pets you have, each in their own way, will one day be praising God, saying "*Blessing, and honour, and*

*glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever.”* The thought of my two cats, Chuck and Sue, verbally praising God, with their paws uplifted to the throne of God – boggles my mind.

#### 10. Beasts in scripture:

Another term used in scripture that is used to refer to entities is the term *Beast*. Of all the references I’ve found, I’ve only been able to determine that this term has two exclusive interpretations – animals, and demonic entities. Since I can’t see how this term can be used to support the theory that there are non-angelic beings dwelling in the heavens, I won’t go into any detail on it.

The only thing about this term that I find unique is that it is a term that refers to the flesh. Only animals and demonic entities are referred to as beasts. Both animals and demonic entities are considered to have a more base nature than humans, hence, I can find not one reference where humans are referred to as beasts.

#### 11. Warnings in scripture – be prepared:

Concerning all of the entities that may exist in the universe, both angels, and of the Hosts of Heaven that may not be angels, there are several specific warnings contained in scripture. These warnings have been placed into effect due to the fact that some we encounter might be fallen angels, or perhaps even *falling* angels. In some cases, it may be very difficult to distinguish between fallen angels, and those that serve God – especially since there may be no distinguishing characteristics that separate the two (aside from the doctrines that they purport). Both faithful and fallen angels, and non-angelic beings, may look alike, use technology, and exhibit the same supernatural powers.

We need to be fully aware of these deceivers, (Matthew 24:24), be able to reveal their deception, (Galatians 1:8-9), defend against it, (Ephesians 6:10-13), and rest in the assurance of God’s love, (Romans 8:35-39)! So long as we keep our focus on Jesus, it should be easy for us (those of us that are true Christians) to spot these deceivers, if and when they come.

##### Matthew 24:24

*<sup>24</sup>For there shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall shew great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if it were possible, they shall deceive the very elect.*

##### Galatians 1:8-9

*<sup>8</sup>But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed. <sup>9</sup>As we said before, so say I now again, If any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.*

##### Ephesians 6:10-13

*<sup>10</sup>Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might. <sup>11</sup>Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. <sup>12</sup>For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. <sup>13</sup>Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand..*

##### Romans 8:35-39

*<sup>35</sup>Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword? <sup>36</sup>As it is written, For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter. <sup>37</sup>Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through*

him that loved us. <sup>38</sup>For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor **angels**, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, <sup>39</sup>Nor height, nor depth, **nor any other creature**, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord..

## References

- 1 *Enhanced Strong's Lexicon*, (Oak Harbor, WA: Logos Research Systems, Inc.) 1995.
- 2 (Tape Series: 2 tape set) Chuck Missler, *Return of the Nephilim*, 1997.
- 3 Jenny Randles, *The UFO Conspiracy*, Artillery House, Artillery Row, London, 1990.



## CHAPTER 6: MYTHICAL BEINGS, BEASTS, AND MONSTERS

Could it be that beings such as big-foot, leprechauns, fairies, el-chupacabras, el-duendes, mermaids, Jersey devils, and practically innumerable other legendary entities from every culture's folklore in the world exist? While it is a known fact that many legends are derived from hoaxes and hype, often they derive a basis from fact. While that basis may have been obscured over time, the factual elements from which legends arise are what I wish to discuss.

### 1. Examples of legends derived from fact:

I will briefly mention two examples of mythical beings that are known to have their legends derived from factual phenomenon. The first of these is the legend of werewolves. The werewolf legend derives its roots from mental illness; a mental disease once called lycanthropy.<sup>1</sup> If someone has lycanthropy, he/she *thinks* he/she is a wolf, and acts like a wolf.

In the Middle ages, lycanthropy became the accepted term for mental illness, whereas a new term, werewolf – actually not new, because it was derived from Greek mythology<sup>2</sup> – was applied to people actually thought go undergo a physical mutation, and turn into wolves. Whether people actually mutated into wolves or not is not what I'm addressing. The idea of werewolves, though, came from the existence of lycanthropy.

The disease, rabies, may have played a part in this legend. Rabies is known for causing insanity, and animals infected with rabies are driven with a compelling madness to bite viciously. This same effect may theoretically be applied to humans. Mentally deranged, or diseased people could have attacked other people, and passed on the disease. Such attacks could've spawned reports by superstitious people presenting events as they perceived them, thus, the jump from lycanthrope to werewolf would be complete.

Some lycanthropy cases in history are very grotesque, and disturbing. Concerning these cases, the perpetrators would simply be considered psychopathic killers by today's definition. They murdered, mutilated, and sometimes ate the bodies of their victims. When placed on trial, they pled insanity, which in the terminology of their time, was lycanthropy.<sup>3</sup>

From these factual cases, a madness not unlike that which initiated the Salem Witch Trials was born. Often during the Middle ages, people were suspected of being werewolves, especially if they had inherent unusual physical features about them that distinguished them.<sup>4</sup>

The other example I wish to mention is the legend of the vampire. The true home of the vampire lies in Eastern Europe, and the vampire legend as we know it today grew up in Romania and Hungary around the start of the 16<sup>th</sup> century.<sup>5</sup> The word itself comes from a Slavonic term, and didn't exist in the English language until the 1730's. This Romanian legend has been linked with a real person. A Romanian Count, the infamous Vlad Dracula (1431 – 1476),<sup>5</sup> was known for impaling his enemies – then decorating their impaled corpses round about his castle.

### 2. Legends and idols – tools for demons:

Legends are often fallacious, and belief in them can sometimes be highly

detrimental. Consider the Salem Witch Trials that I previously mentioned. Legends can easily become a form of idolatry because of their unique roll in the formulation of one's belief system. If left unchecked, they may become highly deceptive, and destructive. Christians should never allow their belief in legends and/or practices conflict with scripture. For example, an avid interest in ghosts may lead a Christian person to speak with a medium in an attempt to communicate with the dead. While the belief that ghosts may exist is not necessarily idolatry in and of itself, communicating with the dead through mediums is strictly forbidden in scripture.

Idols in and of themselves are nothing, as stated in 1 Corinthians 8:4.

#### 1 Corinthians 8:4-6

*<sup>4</sup>As concerning therefore the eating of those things that are offered in sacrifice unto idols, we know that an idol is nothing in the world, and that there is none other God but one. <sup>5</sup>For though there be that are called gods, whether in heaven or in earth, (as there be gods many, and lords many,) <sup>6</sup>But to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him.*

But demons and fallen angels are real entities; they are constantly looking for avenues in which to influence, and deceive humanity. Legends such as ghosts, witches, werewolves, vampires, and the like, are exactly the kind of phenomenon these beings are looking for.

I have little doubt that the individuals of the past, and present, that are mentally deranged to the degree that they are murdering people, then devouring the flesh of their victims, (lycanthropes / werewolves), are in fact demon possessed. I also have little doubt that anyone sucking blood out of another person's neck would likewise be demon possessed. The way to deal with these cases would be medical treatment in cases of insanity, jail or execution in cases of psychopathic killers, and exorcism, which would probably apply to both of the aforementioned if the aforementioned cared about their spiritual state.

Demonic entities use legends in order to perpetuate false beliefs that contradict scripture. If a demon can successfully lure people into listening to mediums and channelers, then they have successfully gained an audience for deception. Furthermore, when people deal with legends in the prescribed legendary format, i.e., using garlic to repel vampires, silver bullets for werewolves, magic circles to prevent demonic voodoo ritualistic attacks, and burning witches at the stake, then they have fallen into the trap of deception. Biblically speaking, it is idolatry to deal with demons on their own turf; making a magic circle for protection is nothing more than accepting the demon's power as dominant, and playing its game. The only way to deal with supernatural evil is through scripture alone! Believe it or not, it was the *true* Christians that put an end to the Salem witch trials, not those common to that era – who claimed Christianity only because their culture determined it. When Sarah Good, a woman of reputable faith by all accounts – as known by all the citizens of Salem, was accused of being a witch, it finally became obvious that innocent people were being brutally murdered!<sup>6</sup>

Since demonic entities have a vested interest in legends, I think it's highly probable that they may often attempt to make legends come to fruition. An example of this may be a demon possessing a human, then giving that human the supernatural abilities to fulfill a legendary role. In cases such as this, any number of possibilities may

be the result. The case of werewolves, for instance, may be evidenced by the legends of Indian sorcerers called shape-shifters.<sup>7</sup> As for ghosts, these may easily be impersonated by demonic entities. I'm not saying that I don't believe in the existence of ghosts, (*as you'll discover in the next chapter*), I'm just saying that it's highly probable that a great deal of supernatural activity relating to legendary beings in general – including ghosts – is being supported by demonic activity.

Often it is very difficult to discern a particular phenomenon, or find the root of a particular legendary being. Ghosts, for example, might be disembodied humans. Ghosts might also be impersonated by demons, or be explained as a kind of psychic phenomenon, and yet, in other cases, may have a practical, scientific explanation. Taking these things into consideration, I think all supernatural phenomenon should be studied with scrutiny, and each case taken on an individual basis. Some things are easy to rule out – those things that involve practices strictly forbidden in scripture. But there are many gray areas that are undefined, and these are the areas I'm highlighting as needing special scrutiny in order to discern their origin.

### 3. Does scripture substantiate the existence of mythical beings?

Is it possible that there truly are mythical beings in this world, such as those I previously mentioned; i.e., big-foot, leprechauns, fairies, el-chupacabras, el-duendes, mermaids, Jersey devils, and others? Why are so many cultural legends about mythical beings found throughout the world, if the only life forms on this earth that exist are only those found in biology text books? Does scripture give any indication of the possible existence of other life forms that might exist, that have possibly eluded scientific discovery?

Returning to the enigmatic Genesis chapter 6, recall that the infamous Sons of God in this passage of scripture mated with humans. This was an unnatural union; their offspring testified of this fact. Was humanity the only species to encounter unnatural unions of this sort?

Recall that in Genesis 6:11, one of the reasons God chose to bring about the flood of Noah was because *all* flesh was corrupt.

Genesis 6:11

*<sup>11</sup>The earth also was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled with violence. <sup>12</sup>And God looked upon the earth, and, behold, it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted his way upon the earth.*

In chapter 4, and in the chapter on evolution in this book, I discuss the distinct possibility that genetic manipulation may have been involved in the activities enshrouding Genesis chapter 6. Concerning this genetic manipulation, if the Sons of God were developing a means in which to successfully cross-breed with humanity and have genetically superior offspring, then this experimentation would most likely have begun with other life forms. I think Genesis 6:11 confirms this possibility. Again, take note that *all* flesh was corrupted in the earth.

So, in short, if genetic experimentation were used to develop the cross-breeding that occurred between humanity and the Sons of God, I think it may be possible that some of the results of that experimentation may be what we see in some of the fossil record. Also, some of it may even be developing to the present day, in genetic

experiments being conducted even as I write this manuscript.

I'm certain it's true that many beings encountered and defined by cultures are demonic entities or fallen angels, but I won't rule out the possibility that some of these species may be genetic aberrations created by fallen angels, similar to the Nephilim giants.

If genetic experimentation was involve with creating different hybrid species, endless recipes of genetic soup, ranging from different species of animals, fallen angels, and humans, would be likely. Taking this into account, beings such as el-chupacabras, el-duendes, and leprechauns, all of which according to legend are imbued with enormous supernatural power, might be the results of these experiments. Furthermore, the odd conclusion that big-foot might have supernatural power – which aids this particular species in its elusiveness – could be a possibility.

I'm somewhat jumping ahead into the evolution chapter here, but I'm only going to make a brief mention of this possibility. The several extinct species of what evolutionists consider *pre-human*, Ramapithecus, and Australopithecus, as well as the extinct members of the genus Homo, Homo Habilis, Homo Erectus, and Neanderthals – which were Homo Sapiens, <sup>8</sup> might owe a debt of gratitude for their brief existence on earth, due to the genetic experimentation of fallen angels. (I will reiterate this theory of angelic genetic experimentation in the chapter on evolution).

### References:

1 Collin Wilson & Dr. Christopher Evans, *The Book of Great Mysteries*, Dorset Press, New York, 1990, pages 143-157.

2 Ibid.

3 Ibid.

4 Ibid.

5 Ibid. Pages 157-170.

6 General information on Salem witch trials: Alan Brinkley, Richard N. Current, Frank Freidel, T. Harry Williams, *American History*, McGraw-Hill, Inc., 1991, pages 80-81. Fact about *true* Christians ending the Salem witch trials was derived from my College history professor. Unfortunately I can't document this source.

7 Carlos Castenada, anthropologist and author, mentions shape shifting throughout his works, which are a documentation of his apprenticeship under a Yaqui shaman, "Don Juan Matus".

8 William K. Purves, Gordon H. Orians, H. Craig Heller, *Life: The Science of Biology*, Sinauer Associates, Inc., W. H. Freeman and Company, 1995, pages 636-639.

## CHAPTER 7: NON-PHYSICAL ENTITIES

Are there such things as entities that are strictly of a spiritual, non-physical nature? Does scripture give any indication that such entities exist?

This chapter is dedicated to answering these two questions. In answering these questions, the terms that will be discussed when referring to non-physical entities are ghosts, demons, and devils. I will also discuss a few other entities that might have a non-corporeal nature, given that certain criteria are met.

### 1. Do ghosts exist?

What happens to people when they die? Are disincarnate spirits forced to go to heaven or hell, due to the nature of the non-corporeal form?

The apostle Paul answers half of this question in 2 Corinthians, when he states that his destination, along with other Christians, when apart from the body is to be in the presence of the Lord; most assume this is in heaven.

2 Corinthians 5:8

*<sup>8</sup>We are confident, I say, and willing rather to be absent from the body, and to be present with the Lord.*

Should we automatically assume that individuals that aren't Christians go to hell after they die? In order to answer this question, we need to analyze a few terms; hell, the grave, and death. In conjunction with these terms, the element of time is critical, because hell, the grave, and death, are not now what they were in the Old Testament times, nor what they will become after the Judgement Day.

Since I will discuss the dimension(s) of hell more in depth in the section of this book dedicated to realms of existence, I won't go into great detail here. For this chapter, I will only focus on the current hell that exists. Concerning the current hell that exists, there's only one aspect of it I wish to mention, and this involves the theory that the current hell that exists is a hell of varying levels. One needs to understand exactly what death and hell are, in order to distinguish the exact whereabouts of all disincarnate spirits.

### 1.1 Degrees of hell:

For starters, the terms *death*, and *hell*, have some definitional boundaries that overlap. In some scriptures, death and hell are synonymous, while in others, death and hell are distinguished from each other. For example, in Luke 16:19-31, the parable of Lazarus and the rich man describes the story of a rich man who dies, and immediately goes to hell. Revelation 20:15, on the other hand, is a scripture that distinguishes the sea, death, and hell as three different places containing the souls of disincarnate spirits.

Luke 16:19-31 (Lazarus and the rich man)

*<sup>19</sup> There was a certain rich man, which was clothed in purple and fine linen, and fared sumptuously every day: <sup>20</sup> And there was a certain beggar named Lazarus, which was laid at his gate, full of sores, <sup>21</sup> And desiring to be fed with the crumbs which fell from the rich man's table: moreover the dogs came and licked his sores. <sup>22</sup> And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom: the rich man also died, and was buried; <sup>23</sup> And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in*

torments, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom. <sup>24</sup>And he cried and said, Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue; for I am tormented in this flame. <sup>25</sup>But Abraham said, Son, remember that thou in thy lifetime receivedst thy good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things: but now he is comforted, and thou art tormented. <sup>26</sup>And beside all this, between us and you there is a great gulf fixed: so that they which would pass from hence to you cannot; neither can they pass to us, that would come from thence. <sup>27</sup>Then he said, I pray thee therefore, father, that thou wouldest send him to my father's house: <sup>28</sup>For I have five brethren; that he may testify unto them, lest they also come into this place of torment. <sup>29</sup>Abraham saith unto him, They have Moses and the prophets; let them hear them. <sup>30</sup>And he said, Nay, father Abraham: but if one went unto them from the dead, they will repent. <sup>31</sup>And he said unto him, If they hear not Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded, though one rose from the dead.

#### Revelation 20:15

<sup>13</sup>And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. <sup>14</sup>And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. <sup>15</sup>And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

So which is it, are death and hell the same place, or are they different? Yes. From what I can tell in scripture, they are sometimes the same place, and sometimes they are different places. The key to understanding this is to understand that the current hell that exists is a place of varying levels.

Varying levels of hell can be derived from the term *lowest hell*, used in Deuteronomy 32:22, and Psalms 86:13. If a lowest hell exists, then simply put, a highest hell must also exist – and everything in between the highest, and lowest hells.

#### Deuteronomy 32:22

<sup>22</sup>For a fire is kindled in mine anger, and shall burn unto the lowest hell, and shall consume the earth with her increase, and set on fire the foundations of the mountains.

#### Psalms 86:13

<sup>3</sup>For great is thy mercy toward me: and thou hast delivered my soul from the lowest hell.

Now that there is a basic understanding of the nature of the current hell that exists, it should be easier to understand the perceived discrepancy between the previously mentioned descriptions of hell in Revelation 20:15, and Luke 16:19-31. Death begins with the grave, which is the uppermost level of hell – because it is closest to the surface of the earth. *Death* in the *grave* doesn't typically include the description of hell fire. The inferno in the center of the earth, on the other hand, is the lowest hell, and almost always includes a description of burning torment. (I will explain this conclusion in more detail and provide more scriptural support in the chapter I have dedicated to the realms of hell in the next section of this book. For now, I will just suffice it to say – *bear with me on some of my statements if I don't explain myself sufficiently to satisfy you.*)

Death, in short, when used in conjunction with the term *grave*, is usually referring to the uppermost level of hell. The term *grave* is literally the *grave* – where a dead body is buried. The grave is described as a place of darkness (Jude 1:6), where there is no order (Job 10:21-22) or remembrance (Psalms 6:5), and is often described as sleep (John 11:11), probably because it has many similarities to sleep. For instance, if a spirit has the ability to think, yet finds itself in a void lacking all sensory input, i.e., no light, sound, sense of touch, smell, or anything else, would not such a state be similar to a dream state? The only life experienced by a spirit in this realm would be the thought life, which would

make this spirit's existence little more than a dream.

Because of Revelation 20:15, it should be evident that not all lost souls go to the *lowest hell*. Perhaps all the spirits that are lost go to the grave, and over time, drift from the surface of the earth to the center of the earth. Then again, perhaps factors such as the amount of life force at death, or current state of moral decay, determine which level of hell a spirit is to sink into. Concerning who goes where and when, these things are determined by God alone. I'm simply pointing out the fact that there are disincarnate human spirits within various levels of the depths of the earth – and the sea.

Some lost spirits may be very near the surface of the earth, so would it be far fetched to presume that some may in fact be *on* the surface of the earth? Why not?

For reasons currently unknown, it appears that lost souls are sometimes able to wind up on the surface of the earth, and are sometimes spotted by the living. (*Many of these may be demonic impersonations, but many might also be the actual spirits of lost souls.*)

Exactly how the dimensional barrier dividing the physical and spiritual realms breaks down is somewhat of a mystery. In some cases, the ground might be cursed, due to a brutal murder, or some other exceptionally evil activity. In other cases, spirits might be summoned. I will now elaborate upon both of these possibilities.

### 1.2 Cursed ground: Is there a case of haunting in the Old Testament?

Cursed ground may have varying effects. One such effect might be the breaking down of the veil that separates realms; i.e., cursed ground may be a few shades lower in glory than normal ground, thus, is closer to the spiritual plane where disincarnate spirits dwell. Concerning cursed ground, and a possible case of a classic haunting, the Old Testament might provide some keen insight.

Three scriptures in the Old Testament – one from Numbers, one from Genesis, and one from Leviticus – combined together, indicate what some might consider a classic haunting case. Going all the way back to Genesis 4, when Cain killed his brother Abel, recall that God mentioned that He heard Abel's blood cry up from the earth.

#### Genesis 4:9-12

<sup>9</sup>And the LORD said unto Cain, Where is Abel thy brother? And he said, I know not: Am I my brother's keeper? <sup>10</sup>And he said, What hast thou done? the voice of thy brother's blood crieth unto me from the ground. <sup>11</sup>And now art thou cursed from the earth, which hath opened her mouth to receive thy brother's blood from thy hand; <sup>12</sup>When thou tillest the ground, it shall not henceforth yield unto thee her strength; a fugitive and a vagabond shalt thou be in the earth.

Is this not a cry from the *grave*? Are not tragic, brutal murders known for being catalysts that invoke territorial curses, where the sorrow of the deceased is often said to be felt, or even heard, or seen?

Genesis 4:9-12 alone is enough to indicate a haunting, but when combined with Leviticus 17:10-15, and Numbers 35:33-34, it becomes more compelling. Leviticus 17:10-15 states that the life of the flesh is in the blood, and Numbers 35:33-34 states that blood shed defiles the ground on which it occurs.

#### Leviticus 17:10-15



<sup>10</sup>And whatsoever man there be of the house of Israel, or of the strangers that sojourn among you, that eateth any manner of blood; I will even set my face against that soul that eateth blood, and will cut him off from among his people. <sup>11</sup>For the life of the flesh is in the blood: and I have given it to you upon the altar to make an atonement for your souls: for it is the blood that maketh an atonement for the soul. <sup>12</sup>Therefore I said unto the children of Israel, No soul of you shall eat blood, neither shall any stranger that sojourneth among you eat blood. <sup>13</sup>And whatsoever man there be of the children of Israel, or of the strangers that sojourn among you, which hunteth and catcheth any beast or fowl that may be eaten; he shall even pour out the blood thereof, and cover it with dust. <sup>14</sup>For it is the life of all flesh; the blood of it is for the life thereof: therefore I said unto the children of Israel, Ye shall eat the blood of no manner of flesh: for the life of all flesh is the blood thereof: whosoever eateth it shall be cut off. <sup>15</sup>And every soul that eateth that which died of itself, or that which was torn with beasts, whether it be one of your own country, or a stranger, he shall both wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even: then shall he be clean.

#### Numbers 35:33-34

<sup>33</sup>So ye shall not pollute the land wherein ye are: for blood it defileth the land: and the land cannot be cleansed of the blood that is shed therein, but by the blood of him that shed it. <sup>34</sup>Defile not therefore the land which ye shall inhabit, wherein I dwell: for I the LORD dwell among the children of Israel.

Rereading Genesis 4:9-12 with the definition of blood in mind from Leviticus 17:10-15, we find that God said “...*the voice of the life of thy brother’s flesh crieth unto me from the ground.*” So even though ...*the earth hath opened her mouth to receive the life of Abel’s flesh*...God could hear the *life of Abel’s flesh* crying up from the ground. Of course God hears everything, but the fact that scripture states that God specifically heard Abel’s cries from the ground is worthy of unique consideration.

Concerning Abel’s death, I think this is exactly the kind of defilement God is alluding to in Numbers 35:33-34. Abel’s blood was shed, and obviously defiled the land.

#### 1.3 Ceremonial cleanness:

Another interesting clue found within the Old Testament that might indicate the existence of ghosts is the aspect of ceremonial cleanness. This clue is found in the description of what happens to people that touch graves, or dead bodies; they become ceremonially unclean. The aspect of *ceremonial cleanness* might be an indication that there is some sort of a connection with a dead body, and the spirit that once housed it.

In Numbers 19:11-22, a law was placed into effect concerning anyone who touches a dead body. In short, if anyone touches a dead body, he/she will be ceremonially unclean until he/she follows the prescription of obtaining a cleansing according to the law. This process took seven days to complete.

#### Numbers 19:11-22

<sup>11</sup>He that toucheth the dead body of any man shall be unclean seven days. <sup>12</sup>He shall purify himself with it on the third day, and on the seventh day he shall be clean: but if he purify not himself the third day, then the seventh day he shall not be clean. <sup>13</sup>Whosoever toucheth the dead body of any man that is dead, and purifieth not himself, defileth the tabernacle of the LORD; and that soul shall be cut off from Israel: because the water of separation was not sprinkled upon him, he shall be unclean; his uncleanness is yet upon him. <sup>14</sup>This is the law, when a man dieth in a tent: all that come into the tent, and all that is in the tent, shall be unclean seven days. <sup>15</sup>And every open vessel, which hath no covering bound upon it, is unclean. <sup>16</sup>And whosoever toucheth one that is slain with a sword in the open fields, or a dead body, or a bone of a man, or a grave, shall be unclean seven days. <sup>17</sup>And for an unclean person they shall take of the ashes of the burnt heifer of purification for sin, and running water shall be put thereto in a vessel: <sup>18</sup>And a

*clean person shall take hyssop, and dip it in the water, and sprinkle it upon the tent, and upon all the vessels, and upon the persons that were there, and upon him that touched a bone, or one slain, or one dead, or a grave: <sup>19</sup>And the clean person shall sprinkle upon the unclean on the third day, and on the seventh day: and on the seventh day he shall purify himself, and wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and shall be clean at even. <sup>20</sup>But the man that shall be unclean, and shall not purify himself, that soul shall be cut off from among the congregation, because he hath defiled the sanctuary of the LORD: the water of separation hath not been sprinkled upon him; he is unclean. <sup>21</sup>And it shall be a perpetual statute unto them, that he that sprinkleth the water of separation shall wash his clothes; and he that toucheth the water of separation shall be unclean until even. <sup>22</sup>And whatsoever the unclean person toucheth shall be unclean; and the soul that toucheth it shall be unclean until even.*

Many of the laws in the Old Testament are mysterious. The basic morality of the Ten Commandments are easy to understand; people need to treat each other with love and respect, (last 6 commandments), and look to their Creator with reverence and for guidance, (first 4 commandments). But does this explain why pigs were considered unclean beasts? Does this explain why circumcision was chosen by God to be the outward means of identifying a Hebrew with his God? *I certainly would find something a bit less painful, if it were up to me.*

Some scholars and theologians ascribe a great deal of these laws to the culture and customs of the people of those times. Today, in the age of scientific reason, scientists have and are continuing to discover that there may be some scientific reasons founding some of the ancient Hebrew laws. For example, it is known that pig meat, (pork, bacon, ham, etc.), is infamous for the number of diseases it can cause if not cooked thoroughly. As for circumcision, it is thought to be beneficially healthy. Furthermore, circumcising a child on the 8<sup>th</sup> day after his birth – which scripture states is the time to do it – is the best time to circumcise him. Though I can't find the source, I've heard that it has recently been discovered that the immune system is at its peak on the 8<sup>th</sup> day after birth.

As for touching a dead body, this can be a very unhealthy thing to do; diseases spread through such contact. But is this the only reason why God warned the Israelites not to touch dead bodies?

Concerning the Hebrew law warning not to touch dead bodies or graves, I think there is a spiritual element at play that goes deeper than simply staying healthy. Why, for instance, does a cleansing from touching a dead body require heifer ashes and water, sprinkled from the branch of a hyssop tree? It doesn't take a rocket scientist to see that heifer ashes and water sprinkled from a hyssop tree isn't going to wash off bacteria. Scripture also states that anyone touching a dead body is ceremonially unclean until he/she is cleaned according to the prescribed ritual. Even for those undertaking the prescribed ritual for cleansing, that person is unclean for seven days, no ifs, ands, or buts about it. It doesn't matter if the defiled person scrubs with boiling water and SOS pads in the Jordan River for six days straight; that person is defiled until his/her seven days are up.

When reading scripture, people should keep in mind that *all scripture is inspired of God.*

## 2 Timothy 2:16-17

*<sup>16</sup>All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: <sup>17</sup>That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.*

Knowing that Hebrew laws were not made from men, no one should ascribe them

to ideas derived from customs, cultures, scientific health benefits, or whatever else. It is true that many of the Hebrew laws were beneficially healthy, and some fell in line with the cultures and customs of the people of those days, but these laws were created by God. And in being created by God, there may very well be aspects about them that aren't fully comprehended by anyone.

I think the aspect of ceremonial cleanness is a part of Hebrew law that goes beyond natural explanation. I can see indications that there is a spiritual element involved in exactly why pigs are considered unclean beasts; of all beasts in scripture, pigs were the creatures chosen to be possessed of demons in Matthew 8:30. Furthermore, I can see that touching a dead body does something spiritually to people, because the method of cleansing someone after that person has touched a dead body doesn't appear to have anything to do with washing off bacteria.

#### 1.4 Ghosts in the New Testament:

In the New Testament, there is one scripture I wish to point out that might indicate the existence of ghosts. Recall that after Jesus Christ died and was resurrected, He appeared to the apostles, and specifically mentioned to them that he wasn't a *ghost*, (i.e., disembodied spirit).

#### Luke 24:36-37

*<sup>36</sup>And as they thus spake, Jesus himself stood in the midst of them, and saith unto them, Peace be unto you. <sup>37</sup>But they were terrified and affrighted, and supposed that they had seen a spirit. <sup>38</sup>And he said unto them, Why are ye troubled? and why do thoughts arise in your hearts? <sup>39</sup>Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me, and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have. <sup>40</sup>And when he had thus spoken, he shewed them his hands and his feet. <sup>41</sup>And while they yet believed not for joy, and wondered, he said unto them, Have ye here any meat? <sup>42</sup>And they gave him a piece of a broiled fish, and of an honeycomb. <sup>43</sup>And he took it, and did eat before them. <sup>44</sup>And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.*

Here, note that Jesus said "...for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have...". If there were no such things as disincarnate spirits appearing to the living, then why didn't Jesus just say, "Spirits have not the ability to appear unto the living"? Instead of saying this, He rather defined the essence of a spirit as being a non-corporeal form, and proved to them by eating meat that he wasn't a disincarnate spirit appearing to them.

#### 1.5 Warnings about the dead:

Recall that aside from cursed ground, a lost soul might actually be summoned from the grave using various techniques; i.e., necromancy, familiar spirits, etc. In the book of Deuteronomy, God strictly forbids the Israelites from initiating any kind of communication with the spirits of the dead.

#### Deuteronomy 18:10-12

*<sup>10</sup>There shall not be found among you any one that maketh his son or his daughter to pass through the fire, or that useth divination, or an observer of times, or an enchanter, or a witch, <sup>11</sup>Or a charmer, or a consulter with familiar spirits, or a wizard, or a necromancer. <sup>12</sup>For all that do these things are an abomination unto the LORD: and because of these abominations the LORD thy God doth drive them out*

*from before thee.*

Because of Deuteronomy 18:10-12, it should be clear that the living shouldn't deliberately attempt to interact with the dead. This passage of scripture describes two types of interaction with disembodied spirits, which are as follows: consulting with familiar spirits, and necromancy. Both are considered an abomination to God.

Backing up to Genesis chapter 4, one might conclude that if in fact God received communication from Abel about his murder, then God is committing sin, because this can be construed as necromancy. This conclusion isn't valid though, for two reasons. First of all, nothing can be hidden from God, so if Abel's blood is crying from the ground, God by nature of who He is can hear it. He doesn't have to seek it out. Furthermore, necromancy and consulting with familiar spirits usually involves rituals that invoke the mediation of demonic spirits, which because of their power, have the ability to summon disincarnate spirits, or more in likely mimic them. God performs no ritual, nor needs the help of anyone, or anything, to be aware of Abel's cries.

Secondly, simply seeing a ghost, or hearing a ghost, isn't consulting with familiar spirits, or necromancy. I've seen ghosts before, without ever invoking any spells, intentionally drawing myself into altered states of awareness, or trying to invoke them. Consulting with familiar spirits, and necromancy, are deliberate attempts to communicate with the dead. Stumbling across them is another story.

#### 1.6 My own experience with necromancy:

I've also fallen into the undesirable category of – *necromancy*. Twice in my life before I knew any better I fiddled with Ouija boards, receiving satanic results both times. For those who don't know what a Ouija board is – it's supposed to be a toy. In fact, these boards can unfortunately be purchased in practically any toy store. A Ouija board is simply a board with letters and numbers, and a sliding pointer that stops at the letters or numbers. If successful, the game results in a strange communication that appears to be independent of the participants. Psychologists insist this communication is a derivative of the unconscious mind, while people more spiritually inclined consider it to be communication with spiritual entities. From what I experienced, and what I've heard about these boards, I lean heavily in favor of their being a spiritual phenomenon, and not a psychological one. And since Christians define seeking out interactive communication with the dead as necromancy, then from a biblical perspective, the use of a Ouija board can be considered necromancy.

The first time I used a Ouija board was in High School – during school actually. I was serious about it, because the prospect of communicating with an entity from another dimension intrigued me. The other kids involved weren't as serious as I was though. I don't remember the communication we received very well, because this was so long ago, but I do remember that we were having a hard time trying to communicate with something that *wasn't* evil. Frequently the game was interrupted with satanic phrases, such as "Dance with the devil", and the like.

One of the kids there kept wanting to contact Satan. I had enough sense to know that was a stupid idea, even back then. I refused to participate when he was touching the pointer. He, along with a few others took the board home, and ended up destroying it the next day. They said they saw billowing clouds of smoke appear in the hallway of the

home where they were using the board, and one of the girls participating went into convulsions and starting screaming.

The second time I used a Ouija board was when I was in the Army. Just me, and a friend of mine wanted to experiment. I considered myself to be a Christian, (*baby Christian to the extreme*), and my friend considered himself to be a Catholic Christian. Both of us were intent on using the board to communicate with something good; for example, an angel of God, or good alien from another world.

I thought that the board was nothing more than an extension of the mind, but wasn't sure whether it enabled communication with the collective subconscious minds of the participants, or beings from other dimensions. If the communication were with my own subconscious, then it would be interesting. If the communication were with an entity from another dimension, then this would be interesting too, because both my friend and I were intent on communicating with something good. Much to our dismay, this was not the result.

During the day, the pointer barely moved. As darkness approached, the pointer steadily increased in speed. At first, we thought we were communicating with someone who used to be a soldier in the barracks where we were. We were surprised and excited to be receiving any results at all, because both of us only vaguely believed it would work with only two people playing. With a large group of people, it's easy to explain the movement of the pointer, but when only two people are using the game, trying to explain who is moving the pointer is much more difficult.

Quite suddenly, the communication with what we thought to be a dead soldier was interrupted by something very powerful, and *very evil*. The pointer quickly darted from one side of the board to the other, with a powerful momentum that amazed the both of us. We were barely able to make out the messages. Strangely, the parts that I understood, my friend didn't catch, and vice versa. Together, we were able to piece the messages together.

The messages were poetic – *disturbing* – metaphors. These metaphors began with mild content, and ended with all out satanic chants.

“You are a ghost like the wind. From whence you came I know not” was one of the opening phrases to address me. Shortly thereafter, I recall another phrase was something like “I am the tiger that roams the night. I will take thy head from iniquity, and feed it to the venomous beast...” At these remarks, my friend and I pulled away, and discussed with puzzled bereavement why we were receiving such undesirable results. Had we no control? If this was just a game that two *Christians* were playing with, then why were we getting satanic messages?

Further communication resulted in “666 – 666 – 666 – Lucifer is my name, etc...” We even tried to communicate again with what we thought was the dead soldier earlier that day, but this was not possible. The pointer would rapidly zip out answers to our questions, and when we asked who it was, satanic inanities would rapidly begin to pour out of the board.

Neither of us had any interest in pursuing any communication with something satanic, so we ended up burning this game in a wooded area of the base where we were stationed. Some claim that these boards sometimes refuse to be destroyed; this was NOT the case. It was successfully burned!

Today, I'm glad to announce that I'm now fully aware of what stupidity this was

that I was involved in. I will never again *play* with a Ouija board, and strongly advise all others not to as well. Using a Ouija board is nothing less than necromancy, which is an abomination unto God. It is a known fact that Ouija boards are used in some occult practices, such as witchcraft, New Age spiritualism, and the like;<sup>1</sup> they have no part in the Christian walk.

### 1.7 Unintentional communication with the dead:

Earlier in this chapter, I mentioned that necromancy, and consulting with familiar spirits, involves rituals that invoke the mediation of demonic spirits, which because of their power, have the ability to summon disincarnate spirits, or more in likely mimic them. In 1 Samuel 28:7-19, we see an example of this activity in action.

#### 1 Samuel 28:7-19

*<sup>7</sup>Then said Saul unto his servants, Seek me a woman that hath a familiar spirit, that I may go to her, and enquire of her. And his servants said to him, Behold, there is a woman that hath a familiar spirit at Endor. <sup>8</sup>And Saul disguised himself, and put on other raiment, and he went, and two men with him, and they came to the woman by night: and he said, I pray thee, divine unto me by the familiar spirit, and bring me him up, whom I shall name unto thee. <sup>9</sup>And the woman said unto him, Behold, thou knowest what Saul hath done, how he hath cut off those that have familiar spirits, and the wizards, out of the land: wherefore then layest thou a snare for my life, to cause me to die? <sup>10</sup>And Saul sware to her by the LORD, saying, As the LORD liveth, there shall no punishment happen to thee for this thing. <sup>11</sup>Then said the woman, Whom shall I bring up unto thee? And he said, Bring me up Samuel. <sup>12</sup>And when the woman saw Samuel, she cried with a loud voice: and the woman spake to Saul, saying, Why hast thou deceived me? for thou art Saul. <sup>13</sup>And the king said unto her, Be not afraid: for what sawest thou? And the woman said unto Saul, I saw gods ascending out of the earth. <sup>14</sup>And he said unto her, What form is he of? And she said, An old man cometh up; and he is covered with a mantle. And Saul perceived that it was Samuel, and he stooped with his face to the ground, and bowed himself. <sup>15</sup>And Samuel said to Saul, Why hast thou disquieted me, to bring me up? And Saul answered, I am sore distressed; for the Philistines make war against me, and God is departed from me, and answereth me no more, neither by prophets, nor by dreams: therefore I have called thee, that thou mayest make known unto me what I shall do. <sup>16</sup>Then said Samuel, Wherefore then dost thou ask of me, seeing the LORD is departed from thee, and is become thine enemy? <sup>17</sup>And the LORD hath done to him, as he spake by me: for the LORD hath rent the kingdom out of thine hand, and given it to thy neighbour, even to David: <sup>18</sup>Because thou obeyedst not the voice of the LORD, nor executedst his fierce wrath upon Amalek, therefore hath the LORD done this thing unto thee this day. <sup>19</sup>Moreover the LORD will also deliver Israel with thee into the hand of the Philistines: and to morrow shalt thou and thy sons be with me: the LORD also shall deliver the host of Israel into the hand of the Philistines.*

It should be noted that Saul wasn't blessed in any way by seeking out guidance in this manner. In fact, his doom was prophesied to him, and seeking out someone who consulted with familiar spirits did nothing but further provoke God's anger.

Even though consulting with familiar spirits is condemned in scripture, God allowed this communication to be conducted; I consider it the grace of God that Saul was able to receive any communication from the prophet Samuel at all.

While the above scripture is an example of communication with the deceased being intentionally invoked, what if a deceased person were simply to pop up and attempt communication with the living – without being summoned at all? Hypothetically speaking, if I were sitting in my home one evening, and suddenly became aware of a spirit standing in front of me, would I be doing something evil? I don't think so. I don't see how a person can be morally incriminated for simply perceiving something that most

other people don't.

Now what if this spirit says something to me, and awaits a response? What then, am I sinning if I respond to it? Now I'm getting into a gray area. I believe in this situation, spiritual discernment, and a certain degree of logic would be called for.

The first thing I would do if faced with such a situation is pray to God. If this didn't immediately eliminate the entity, I would then fall upon my logic – and the Bible – for an immediate recourse, which I believe God would consider sufficient for discernment if praying didn't eliminate the entity at once.

Since the entity didn't disappear after praying, I'd be more inclined to believe that it was an angelic being, and that it was there to relay a message to me inspired of God. I would think this because God is the living God, and He wouldn't ignore my prayers to Him if this entity were demonic.

I wouldn't immediately assume this entity was from God though. Before simply accepting whatever this entity told me, I'd question it. If the entity claimed to be a deceased person, then I would wonder why he/she wasn't in heaven. If it didn't *come* from heaven, then it's most likely a deceived, lost entity, specifically separated from God for a good reason. If anything, such an entity would be inspired of the devil.

If after testing the spirit, I concluded that this entity was demonic, and praying didn't make it go away – then I would go away! *Actually – I'd probably go away – very rapidly – as an initial recourse, because I'd be terrified! But in the abstract, I'll just go with what I have written here.*

For a long-term solution, I'd definitely seek out godly council. Whether the incident would be of God, or the devil, it would require the involvement of the Body of Christ. If it were from God, then the church should be blessed by it. If it were from the devil, then the church should be involved in eliminating it.

Going further into this bizarre scenario, if the entity continued to appear on a regular basis, I wouldn't give up on prayer. I've studied several cases where people were plagued with such phenomenon, and they called a priest to come and bless their home. When this didn't work, they called a psychic, or a medium, etc.<sup>2</sup> The people that did this did so because they didn't really have any true faith; they were just looking for a quick fix to their problems. When anyone asks for God's help, God doesn't want to slap on a Band-Aid and walk away. God isn't a Band-Aid; He is a living, personal being. He wants to get involved in everyone's life. When there is no true desire to seek Him out, then I believe He isn't particularly interested in supplying His divine help. I would liken such a situation to a parent whose wayward son only pays any attention to his parents when he gets in trouble and wants to be bailed out. In many cases, bailing out the son only prolongs the period of time it will take before the son matures to the degree that he sees what he's doing is wrong, and corrects his situation. In some cases, it may even be God Himself allowing such phenomenon to occur in someone's life in order to get that person to seek Him out. *(Believe me, I know this from personal experience).*

The wrong thing to do when faced with spiritual activity is to consult someone affiliated with spiritual phenomenon that isn't a Christian, i.e., psychic, medium, etc. These people are usually involved in things worse than the phenomenon at hand. Advice such as sprinkling salt in the corners of the rooms of the home, or visualizing a protective white light, are all superstitious garbage that do little more than appease the demonic entities in question, if there are any.

If any entity claimed anything contrary to scripture, i.e., for example, that there might be any other way to God the Father except through Jesus Christ, I'd know this entity was demonic. In short, I'd *test the spirits*, applying all the same scriptures as mentioned in chapter 6 of this book.

We need to be fully aware of deceivers, (Matthew 24:24), be able to reveal their deception, (Galatians 1:8-9), defend against it, (Ephesians 6:10-13), and rest in the assurance of God's love, (Romans 8:35-39)!

#### Matthew 24:24

<sup>24</sup>*For there shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall shew great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if it were possible, they shall deceive the very elect.*

#### Gal 1:8-9

<sup>8</sup>*But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed. <sup>9</sup>As we said before, so say I now again, If any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.*

#### Ephesians 6:10-13

<sup>10</sup>*Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might. <sup>11</sup>Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. <sup>12</sup>For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. <sup>13</sup>Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand..*

#### Romans 8:35-39

<sup>35</sup>*Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword? <sup>36</sup>As it is written, For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter. <sup>37</sup>Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us. <sup>38</sup>For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor **angels**, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, <sup>39</sup>Nor height, nor depth, **nor any other creature**, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.*

### 1.8 Conclusion about ghosts:

In conclusion to the question "Do ghosts exist?" I hope I have provided a sufficient answer. I believe they do, and I think there are several scriptures in the Bible which support this conclusion.

Seeing that there is biblical evidence that ghosts exist, the same scriptures that apply to disincarnate humans, (*i.e.*, *ghosts*), might very well apply to other physical beings that have died, and have become disincarnate entities. These physical beings might be animals, or even *angels*, or hybrids between angels, and other beings of the earth, which resulted in aberrations such as the *Nephilim*, and perhaps others I discussed in chapter 6 of this book. I will now elaborate upon these other types of life forms that might become ghosts.

### 2. Can animals be ghosts?

In order to determine whether animals can be ghosts or not, it must be resolved whether or not they are alive with spirits, just as humans are, and if their spirits continue to exist after physical death. In scripture, there are several clues that hint to the possibility that animals have spirits as humans do, and may continue to exist after physical death.



First of all, animals are living beings of flesh and blood – which may automatically indicate they have spirits (Numbers 16:22). The Bible also mentions – primarily indirectly – that animals should be treated with care (Proverbs 12:10; Exodus 23:5, 19, 34:26; Deuteronomy 14:21, 22:4, 6-7, 25:4; 1 Corinthians 9:9; and 1 Timothy 5:18). Furthermore, animals have a basic sense of moral accountability (Genesis 9:2, 9:3-6; Exodus 21:28-36; and concerning demon possession – Genesis 3:1-5 and Matthew 8:30-33). Animals receive punishment for certain sins (Genesis 3:14-15, 9:3-6; and Exodus 21:28-36), may experience a type of salvation (Genesis 6:19-22, – and Acts 10:9-16 / Deuteronomy 14:7-21 – with some explaining), and lastly, animals are found within the realm of heaven (Isaiah 11:6-9, 65:25). I will now elaborate upon all of these statements, then provide a conclusion as to how they might add up together, to answer the question of whether animals might be able to become ghosts or not.

## 2.1 Do all creatures of flesh and blood have spirits?

Numbers 16:22 might be an indication that animals have spirits, but this could easily be argued against as a conclusion taken out of context.

Numbers 16:22

*<sup>22</sup>And they fell upon their faces, and said, O God, the God of the spirits of all flesh, shall one man sin, and wilt thou be wroth with all the congregation?*

Take note of the phrase, “*the God of the spirits of all flesh*”. This phrase might mean that all entities composed of flesh have spirits, but this conclusion by itself is weak. Only when combined with more scripture can the conclusion that all beings composed of flesh contain spirits be established firmly.

## 2.2 Should animals be treated with care? If so, then why?

Scripture makes it clear that mankind is to dominate over the animal kingdom. This hierarchy is established in Genesis 1:24-26, 9:2; and Psalms 8:6-8.

Genesis 1:24-26

*<sup>24</sup>And God said, Let the earth bring forth the living creature after his kind, cattle, and creeping thing, and beast of the earth after his kind: and it was so. <sup>25</sup>And God made the beast of the earth after his kind, and cattle after their kind, and every thing that creepeth upon the earth after his kind: and God saw that it was good. <sup>26</sup>And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.*

Genesis 9:2

*<sup>2</sup>And the fear of you and the dread of you shall be upon every beast of the earth, and upon every fowl of the air, upon all that moveth upon the earth, and upon all the fishes of the sea; into your hand are they delivered.*

Psalms 8:6-8

*<sup>6</sup>Thou madest him to have dominion over the works of thy hands; thou hast put all things under his feet: <sup>7</sup>All sheep and oxen, yea, and the beasts of the field; <sup>8</sup>The fowl of the air, and the fish of the sea, and whatsoever passeth through the paths of the seas.*

But while mankind is clearly established as having dominion over the animal

kingdom,  
the relationship that exists between man and beast should be respectable. The Bible gives several scriptures that explain different situations where people should have a certain degree of compassion on animals. All of the previously mentioned scriptures indicating that people should care about and have compassion on animals are proof of this. Following are these direct quotes from scripture, all of which are dedicated to the relationship that should exist between humans and animals.

Proverbs 12:10

*<sup>10</sup>A righteous man regardeth the life of his beast: but the tender mercies of the wicked are cruel.*

Exodus 23:5

*<sup>5</sup>If thou see the ass of him that hateth thee lying under his burden, and wouldest forbear to help him, thou shalt surely help with him.*

Exodus 23:19, 34:26, Deuteronomy 14:21

*<sup>26</sup>The first of the firstfruits of thy land thou shalt bring unto the house of the LORD thy God. Thou shalt not seethe a kid in his mother's milk.*

Deuteronomy 22:4

*<sup>4</sup>Thou shalt not see thy brother's ass or his ox fall down by the way, and hide thyself from them: thou shalt surely help him to lift them up again.*

Deuteronomy 22:6-7

*<sup>6</sup>If a bird's nest chance to be before thee in the way in any tree, or on the ground, whether they be young ones, or eggs, and the dam sitting upon the young, or upon the eggs, thou shalt not take the dam with the young: <sup>7</sup>But thou shalt in any wise let the dam go, and take the young to thee; that it may be well with thee, and that thou mayest prolong thy days.*

Deuteronomy 25:4, 1 Corinthians 9:9, 1 Timothy 5:18

*<sup>4</sup>Thou shalt not muzzle the ox when he treadeth out the corn.*

When I read all of these scriptures, it becomes apparent to me that God cares for the lives of animals. The above scriptures give examples of people helping animals that are struggling in work, having mercy on a bird whose nest falls to the ground, and refusing to boil a goat in its mother's milk because of a respect for the animal. My question to all of these scriptures is as follows: If animals don't have spirits, then why care? Scripture never states that you should take care of your tools, but does state these instances of how to care for work animals. If there were no true living spirit within animals, I personally don't think it would matter *how* they were treated.

### 2.3 Do animals have a basic sense of moral accountability? Can animals sin, and if so, what is their punishment?

In my analysis of scripture, I have found two basic laws regarding animals, and their sense of moral accountability. One of these laws is clear to see, while the other requires a little deductive reasoning to extract.

One clear way to spot laws is the fact that breaking them results in punishment. Since I can only find two punishments listed in scripture regarding animals, then I conclude that I can only discern two fundamental laws that apply to animals. The first of these laws is murder. No animal should ever murder a human being. The second of these laws is somewhat odd, and I'm not certain exactly how to put it. Animals shouldn't invite demonic possession. Exactly how animals could be responsible for being

possessed, I'm not sure, but I think scripture seems to hint that they might have a choice in the matter. I will now provide detailed information on these two laws, and their respective punishments, as recorded in scripture.

When God first created the animals, He ingrained in them a sense of fear concerning humanity. This respect animals were designed with is mentioned in Genesis 9:2.

#### Genesis 9:2

*<sup>2</sup>And the fear of you and the dread of you shall be upon every beast of the earth, and upon every fowl of the air, upon all that moveth upon the earth, and upon all the fishes of the sea; into your hand are they delivered.*

In a sense, this natural fear of humanity can be considered a law of moral accountability for animals. The extreme violation of this ingrained respect for humanity is expressed when an animal murders a human being. The penalty for murdering a human being is death. This penalty applies to men, *and beasts*, and is mentioned in Genesis 9:3-6.

#### Genesis 9:3-6

*<sup>3</sup>Every moving thing that liveth shall be meat for you; even as the green herb have I given you all things. <sup>4</sup>But flesh with the life thereof, which is the blood thereof, shall ye not eat. <sup>5</sup>And surely your blood of your lives will I require; at the hand of every beast will I require it, and at the hand of man; at the hand of every man's brother will I require the life of man. <sup>6</sup>Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of God made he man.*

Exodus 21:28-36 is a recapitulation of Genesis 9:3-6, except for the fact that it's more specific. It's my guess that there were probably several incidents regarding oxen that killed people, so God deemed it necessary to provide the people of Israel with additional guidance regarding oxen.

#### Exodus 21:28-36

*<sup>28</sup>If an ox gore a man or a woman, that they die: then the ox shall be surely stoned, and his flesh shall not be eaten; but the owner of the ox shall be quit. <sup>29</sup>But if the ox were wont to push with his horn in time past, and it hath been testified to his owner, and he hath not kept him in, but that he hath killed a man or a woman; the ox shall be stoned, and his owner also shall be put to death. <sup>30</sup>If there be laid on him a sum of money, then he shall give for the ransom of his life whatsoever is laid upon him. <sup>31</sup>Whether he have gored a son, or have gored a daughter, according to this judgment shall it be done unto him. <sup>32</sup>If the ox shall push a manservant or a maidservant; he shall give unto their master thirty shekels of silver, and the ox shall be stoned. <sup>33</sup>And if a man shall open a pit, or if a man shall dig a pit, and not cover it, and an ox or an ass fall therein; <sup>34</sup>The owner of the pit shall make it good, and give money unto the owner of them; and the dead beast shall be his. <sup>35</sup>And if one man's ox hurt another's, that he die; then they shall sell the live ox, and divide the money of it; and the dead ox also they shall divide.*

The law "Thou shalt not kill – *people obviously*" is a law that, according to scripture, animals have written upon their hearts. The penalty for violating this law is death. This law and its penalty are strait forward, and should be clear to see in the scriptures I have listed. Now for the second law, which as I mentioned earlier is more obscure, will require more explanation.

For starters, the first animal to sin in scripture is the *serpent* in Genesis.

### Genesis 3:1-5

*<sup>1</sup>Now the serpent was more subtil than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden? <sup>2</sup>And the woman said unto the serpent, We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden: <sup>3</sup>But of the fruit of the tree which is in the midst of the garden, God hath said, Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die. <sup>4</sup>And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die: <sup>5</sup>For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil.*

Soon after the serpent deceived Eve into eating the forbidden fruit, it was confronted by God. God pronounced its sentence.

### Genesis 3:14-15

*<sup>14</sup>And the LORD God said unto the serpent, Because thou hast done this, thou art cursed above all cattle, and above every beast of the field; upon thy belly shalt thou go, and dust shalt thou eat all the days of thy life: <sup>15</sup>And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.*

The serpent in the garden is very puzzling indeed, and raises several questions. First of all, how was Eve able to have a conversation with a snake? Well, okay, we can just try to breeze past this by stating that she was a perfect, glorified human being. She may have been able to communicate with all animals in such a fashion – *which is very interesting I might add.*

But my second question to this passage of scripture is *what exactly is the serpent?* Is it the devil taking on the form of a snake, is it just a snake, or is it a snake possessed of the devil? I can only think of these three possibilities, and only one of them seems plausible.

If the devil took on the form of a snake, then why were snakes cursed above all cattle, and above every beast of the field, and condemned to crawl upon their bellies and eat dust all the days of their lives? Why curse an animal for what the devil did?

And if the tempter in this scripture is simply a snake, then why did God prophesy that *“I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.”* This prophesy is a clear reference to Christ overcoming Satan, not the reptilian animals we call snakes.

Clearly, the serpent in the Garden of Eden was an animal that was either influenced by Satan, or possessed by Satan. This is why there is punishment declared upon the actual creature that allowed itself to be influenced or possessed of the devil, and also a prophesy declaring the destruction of Satan himself.

The main element I wish to extract out of this passage of scripture is the fact that an animal was involved in original sin, and it was held accountable for its actions. Because of what it did, God cursed it, showing that it sinned, and was punished for that sin. I know it seems odd that an animal might have any choice in that matter of allowing itself to be possessed of Satan, but I can find no other feasible explanation for this passage of scripture. God is just, and I don't see the justice in punishing the serpent unless it had a choice in whether or not it was going to allow itself to be possessed.

Scripture also gives an account of another instance where animals were possessed by demons. A herd of pigs were possessed in Matthew 8:30-33.

### Matthew 8:30-33

<sup>30</sup>*And there was a good way off from them an herd of many swine feeding. <sup>31</sup>So the devils besought him, saying, If thou cast us out, suffer us to go away into the herd of swine. <sup>32</sup>And he said unto them, Go. And when they were come out, they went into the herd of swine: and, behold, the whole herd of swine ran violently down a steep place into the sea, and perished in the waters. <sup>33</sup>And they that kept them fled, and went their ways into the city, and told every thing, and what was befallen to the possessed of the devils.*

Apparently the swine in this passage of scripture simply wouldn't tolerate being possessed. They chose to commit suicide rather than to be possessed by devils. I don't think it's any accident that Jesus allowed this possession to occur, either. The Jews of the village where He was at probably had no business raising swine. Recall that their meat was forbidden among Jews during this time.

Not all animals taken with demonic possession might act as noble as the pigs in Matthew 8:30-33. Some, such as the serpent in Genesis 3:1-5, might willingly invite demonic possession. Not too long ago I saw a movie called *The Ghost And The Darkness*, which was based on a true story. This movie was about two lions in Africa that hunted together, and appeared to enjoy killing humans. Even those not taken in by the African legends of these beasts regarded them as highly unusual.

I wouldn't be surprised at all if the African legends regarding these lions were true. The natives of the area where these lions hunted considered the lions to be unnatural; even devils.

#### 2.4 Do animals have any salvation?

As previously determined, animals probably have spirits, and are dealing with sin just as humans are, though in a more primitive form than humans. Another link that testifies to the fact that animals are dealing with sin is the fact that they have been cursed with death, just as humans are. This can be assumed from Romans 5:12-14, and 1 Corinthians 15:21-22, and the fact that there are currently no immortal animals.

##### Romans 5:12-14

<sup>12</sup>*Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned: <sup>13</sup>(For until the law sin was in the world: but sin is not imputed when there is no law. <sup>14</sup>Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come.*

##### 1 Corinthians 15:21-22

<sup>21</sup>*For since by man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead. <sup>22</sup>For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.*

Seeing that animals are faced with the terrible dilemma of sin and death, is there any hope in salvation for them? This is actually a common question asked by children whose pets die, though the wording is slightly different. After reading this chapter, if you the reader are a parent that has had this question posed to you by your child, then you should be able to provide a better answer than "Um... I think so..."

#### 2.4.1 The flood of Noah – a foreshadowing of the cross:

In the days of Noah, God condemned all the animals of the earth to die along with humanity, *except for selected pairs of every species*. Just as Noah and his family were

saved, so were those animals that God chose to go into the ark.

As a child, I used to wonder just exactly how difficult it was for Noah to collect two of every species existing in the entire earth. I used to imagine Noah as being someone like “Tom” on the *Mutual of Omaha, Wild Kingdom* series; some sort of rhino wrestling freak!

Catching two of every species on the earth would’ve required the knowledge of all species of the earth, and the cunning to be able to catch them all without the aid of any technology we now have. Personally, I don’t think this is very likely. I think God personally selected the pairs of each species that were pure of heart, and put the desire within their spirits to travel to the ark, and peacefully submit to Noah’s demands. (*Noah had enough work with the boat!*) But this is just speculation – *like much of this book*. The important element I wish to mention about Noah’s ark is the fact that God *saved* one pair of each species on the earth. Since the ark is a shadowy reflection of salvation given by Christ, I think the fact that it included saving animals is noteworthy.

#### 2.4.2 Have unclean animals been spiritually cleaned?

In the Old Testament, many animals were considered *unclean*. Exactly what this means is uncertain. I’m under the impression that cleanness in the Old Testament sense has spiritual overtones. To briefly examine which animals were considered unclean, take a look at Deuteronomy 14:7-21.

##### Deuteronomy 14:7-21

*7Nevertheless these ye shall not eat of them that chew the cud, or of them that divide the cloven hoof; as the camel, and the hare, and the coney: for they chew the cud, but divide not the hoof; therefore they are unclean unto you. 8And the swine, because it divideth the hoof, yet cheweth not the cud, it is unclean unto you: ye shall not eat of their flesh, nor touch their dead carcase. 9These ye shall eat of all that are in the waters: all that have fins and scales shall ye eat: 10And whatsoever hath not fins and scales ye may not eat; it is unclean unto you. 11Of all clean birds ye shall eat. 12But these are they of which ye shall not eat: the eagle, and the ossifrage, and the osprey, 13And the glede, and the kite, and the vulture after his kind, 14And every raven after his kind, 15And the owl, and the night hawk, and the cuckow, and the hawk after his kind, 16The little owl, and the great owl, and the swan, 17And the pelican, and the gier eagle, and the cormorant, 18And the stork, and the heron after her kind, and the lapwing, and the bat. 19And every creeping thing that flieth is unclean unto you: they shall not be eaten. 20But of all clean fowls ye may eat. 21Ye shall not eat of any thing that dieth of itself: thou shalt give it unto the stranger that is in thy gates, that he may eat it; or thou mayest sell it unto an alien: for thou art an holy people unto the LORD thy God. Thou shalt not seethe a kid in his mother’s milk.*

What is seen in Deuteronomy 14:7-21 is a well-defined list of creatures that shouldn’t be eaten because they were considered to be *unclean* by God. Some of these animals were defiled to such a degree that it was forbidden to even touch their dead carcasses. Why?

Adding to the list of creatures that shouldn’t be eaten are oxen that have killed people. Recall from Exodus 21:28-36 that along with the penalty of stoning for oxen that have killed people, their flesh shouldn’t be eaten. Again I ask, why? Normally, oxen were acceptable to eat. Could it be that an ox that murdered someone defiled itself spiritually, and that this defilement was contained in its flesh insomuch that eating it would defile a person?

Now jumping into the New Testament, I will quote Acts 10:9-16 - *a scripture*

*apparently ignored by 7<sup>th</sup> Day Adventists, Mormons, etc.*

#### Acts 10:9-16

<sup>9</sup> On the morrow, as they went on their journey, and drew nigh unto the city, Peter went up upon the housetop to pray about the sixth hour: <sup>10</sup> And he became very hungry, and would have eaten: but while they made ready, he fell into a trance, <sup>11</sup> And saw heaven opened, and a certain vessel descending unto him, as it had been a great sheet knit at the four corners, and let down to the earth: <sup>12</sup> Wherein were all manner of fourfooted beasts of the earth, and wild beasts, and creeping things, and fowls of the air. <sup>13</sup> And there came a voice to him, Rise, Peter; kill, and eat. <sup>14</sup> But Peter said, Not so, Lord; for I have never eaten any thing that is common or unclean. <sup>15</sup> And the voice spake unto him again the second time, What God hath cleansed, that call not thou common. <sup>16</sup> This was done thrice: and the vessel was received up again into heaven.

Wow! Now what is this all about? I think the answer is obvious; what happened on the cross had its effects throughout all creation. God had *cleansed* all those animals that were considered *unclean*. This is one of the primary reasons I think that there is a spiritual element involved in the aspect of *cleanness* as mentioned in scripture. I also think that Acts 10:9-16 provides a strong argument that the cross may provide a means of salvation for animals.

Exactly how this salvation works, I don't know; all I know is that God knows the depths of all hearts. It's my guess that there are some creatures from all species that have been chosen by God to be saved, and that this salvation involves both the choice of each creature, in conjunction with God's predestined selection.

#### 2.4.3 What happens to animals when they die?

When the prophet Isaiah described heaven, interestingly enough, he mentioned that there would be animals there. This is recorded in Isaiah 11:6-9, and 65:25.

#### Isaiah 11:6-9

<sup>6</sup>The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them. <sup>7</sup>And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox. <sup>8</sup>And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice' den. <sup>9</sup>They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea.

#### Isaiah 65:25

<sup>25</sup>The wolf and the lamb shall feed together, and the lion shall eat straw like the bullock: and dust shall be the serpent's meat. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, saith the LORD.

In heaven – at least the New Jerusalem during the millennial reign, (*which is determinable from the fact that there are children there*), Isaiah mentions that there are wolves, lambs, leopards, goats, calves, lions, cattle, oxen, asps, cockatrices, and serpents. I think this is a large enough collection of animals to assume that some of every species will be there.

These animals aren't ordinary. They're exceptionally peaceful, and non-carnivorous. Seeing that these animals are dwelling in heaven, and are glorified because of their non-violent nature, it's obvious that they are *saved*. Another scripture pointing out the fact that these creatures are glorified is Revelation 5:13-14.

## Revelation 5:13-14

<sup>13</sup>*And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I saying, Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever.*

Revelation 5:13-14 states that *every creature* will give glory to God. I mention this scripture simply to illustrate the fact that animals have spirits, and were created for the explicit purpose of glorifying God throughout eternity.

### 2.5 Conclusion of whether animals can become ghosts:

Have I simply gone off on a tangent without any intent of answering the question of whether animals may become ghosts or not? Absolutely not!

To summarize all I've discussed about animals, I can now say with some degree of scriptural support that animals have spirits just as humans do, and that they are subject to sin and death just as humans are. Animals also have some form of salvation, and their presence in heaven is clearly stated in the book of Isaiah.

Because animals are found in heaven, it's only logical to assume that those that don't go to heaven go to the same places where lost human souls go. Because some human souls might end up on the surface of the earth – hence, *ghosts*, then animal souls might be subject to the same phenomenon as well.

Perhaps I can be accused of being too verbose in finding my way around to this conclusion, but I'm simply trying to be as thorough as possible.

### 3. Demons, devils, and angels:

So far in this chapter I've discussed the possible existence of non-physical entities known as *ghosts* – a term which I attribute to physically deceased humans, and animals. Now I will apply some of the same information used in explaining the existence of ghosts, to explain the difference between fallen angels, and demons / devils.

Before I go any further, I want to step aside and eliminate one term by mentioning that it is synonymous with another term. In scripture, the terms *demon*, and *devil*, are synonymous terms. In the King James Version of the Holy Bible, the term demon is never used; the term devil is preferred. Other versions of the Bible use the word demon though, deriving it from the Greek word *daimonizomai*. For this book, I will use the term demon instead of devil, in order to distinguish demons – from Satan himself, who is often called *The* devil.

If you can recall from chapter 4, I briefly mentioned what I defined the term *demon* to mean. A demon is the disincarnate spirit of a fallen angel, or disincarnate spirit of an aberrant hybrid of a fallen angel and some other species, such as a human, or possibly animals. I gave several reasons why I thought this; paramount among them is the fact that angels are noted in several places in scripture as beings with physical properties, while demons are specifically noted in scripture as beings without physical bodies – beings that seek a host for embodiment. I will now elaborate upon the evidence that points to the conclusion that I have derived concerning the definition of the term "Demon".



Since much of chapter 4 of this book was dedicated to demonstrating the fact that angels often exhibit physical properties, I won't bother to repeat that same information in this chapter. As for the second fact I previously mentioned – demons being noted in scripture as beings seeking embodiment – I will now list several examples of this.

In the books of Matthew, Mark, and Luke, the term “Devils” is used 37 times in the King James Version, always in conjunction with demon possession. Since there are so many of these scriptures in support of the fact that demons are disincarnate entities seeking embodiment, I'll only give the references. They are as follows: Matthew 4:24, 7:22, 8:16, 8:28, 8:31, 8:33, 9:34, 10:8, 12:24, 12:27, 12:28; Mark 1:32, 1:34, 1:39, 3:15, 3:22, 5:12, 6:13, 9:38, 16:9; and Luke 4:41, 8:2, 8:27, 8:30, 8:33, 8:35, 8:36, 8:38, 9:1, 9:49, 10:17, 11:15, 11:18, 11:19, 11:20, 13:32. The term “devils” is used in other scriptures, but in the books of Matthew, Mark, and Luke, every usage of this term has to do with spirits that possess people, thus, they are disincarnate entities that seek embodiment.

So far, it should be understood that angels – at least some of them – are physical beings, and demons are non-physical beings that seek embodiment. Concerning these facts, there are a few questions that when asserted and answered, provide a clear understanding as to the origin of where demons come from.

First of all, when an angel sins, what happens to it? In 2 Peter 2:4, and in Jude 1:6, it's obvious that these beings are apprehended and imprisoned.

#### 2 Peter 2:4

*<sup>4</sup>For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment*

#### Jude 1:6

*<sup>6</sup>And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day.*

Note that both of these references are in past tense, which seems to indicate that there are no more angels that are sinning. Is this really the case? I don't think so. Angels in the past sinned, and were cast down to hell, but I think that there might still be angels that are being deceived, even today. The reason I think this is because of three scriptures concerning the Nephilim. In Genesis 6:4, and in Matthew 24:37, and Luke 17:26-30, there are indications that the mating between angels and humans that occurred in Genesis 6 continued to occur after the flood of Noah, and will become an increasing phenomenon in the end times.

#### Genesis 6:4

*<sup>4</sup>There were giants in the earth in those days; and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare children to them, the same became mighty men which were of old, men of renown.*

#### Matthew 24:37

*<sup>37</sup>But as the days of Noe (Noah) were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.*

#### Luke 17:26-30

*<sup>26</sup>And as it was in the days of Noe (Noah), so shall it be also in the days of the Son of man. <sup>27</sup>They did eat, they drank, they married wives, they were given in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark, and the flood came, and destroyed them all. <sup>28</sup>Likewise also as it was in the days of Lot; they did eat, they drank, they bought, they sold, they planted, they builded; <sup>29</sup>But the same day that Lot went out of Sodom it rained fire and brimstone from heaven, and destroyed them all. <sup>30</sup>Even thus shall it be in the day*

*when the Son of man is revealed.*

Perhaps when an angel sins, it becomes corrupted, and subject to death – spiritual, (which occurs immediately), and physical, (which occurs over time). Death slowly begins to physically age these beings, then they physically die. After physical death, these beings become trapped in hell on earth, where they await judgement.

Scripture specifically states that fallen angels are cast into hell, but scripture also notes indirectly that this may not take place immediately. The process of getting them there may take a little time. Consider that Adam and Eve didn't physically die until after 1000 years of living. This indicates a gap in time over which God's sentence of death is carried out. Also, in Psalms 78:49-50, God is even using fallen angels – *evil angels* – to execute his judgement on people. Because these beings are utilized by God, (*whether they're aware of it or not is another matter*), it's obvious some of them aren't imprisoned in hell yet. Satan isn't imprisoned in hell; he's known as the *Prince of the power of the air* in Ephesians 2:2. The *Prince of Persia* mentioned in Daniel 10:1-14 isn't imprisoned in hell either, (at least at the time this prophecy was given). This fallen angel had enough power to confront the archangel Gabriel and delay him for twenty one days; Gabriel needed the archangel Michael's help in order to battle his way through, and deliver God's message to the prophet Daniel.

#### Psalms 78:49-50

<sup>49</sup>*He cast upon them the fierceness of his anger, wrath, and indignation, and trouble, by sending evil angels among them.* <sup>50</sup>*He made a way to his anger; he spared not their soul from death, but gave their life over to the pestilence.*

#### Ephesians 2:2

<sup>2</sup>*Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience:*

#### Daniel 10:1-14

<sup>1</sup>*In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia a thing was revealed unto Daniel ... I lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and behold a certain man clothed in linen, whose loins were girded with fine gold of Uphaz: <sup>6</sup>His body also was like the beryl, and his face as the appearance of lightning, and his eyes as lamps of fire, and his arms and his feet like in colour to polished brass, and the voice of his words like the voice of a multitude. <sup>7</sup>And I Daniel alone saw the vision: for the men that were with me saw not the vision; but a great quaking fell upon them, so that they fled to hide themselves...* <sup>11</sup>*And he said unto me, O Daniel, a man greatly beloved, understand the words that I speak unto thee ...* <sup>12</sup>*Then said he unto me, Fear not, Daniel: for from the first day that thou didst set thine heart to understand, and to chasten thyself before thy God, thy words were heard, and I am come for thy words. <sup>13</sup>But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of Persia. <sup>14</sup>Now I am come to make thee understand what shall befall thy people in the latter days: for yet the vision is for many days.*

After physical death, fallen angels might also be powerful enough to roam about on the surface of the earth, resisting the pull of the grave – if there *is* some sort of *natural drift*. (Of course this is only if God allows them too – which I think He does for a time – for the same reason as mentioned in Psalms 78:49-50; to execute His judgement on people.) My point about these beings is that scripture notes many cases of demons possessing people; some of them might be fallen angels have physically died, and haven't been cast into hell yet.

As for the Nephilim, and other possible aberrations created by fallen angels,

where do their spirits go? Scripture doesn't give any direct reference to the location of these disincarnate spirits, other than the fact that there are many cases of demonic possession. I assume that these spirits end up in the same places as the souls of lost human souls, – i.e. various levels of hell – but many are obviously capable of remaining on the surface of the earth, because of the existence of demonic possession.

From all of the above mentioned about fallen angels, and their aberrant offspring, my conclusion as to what demons are is simply this: demons are the *ghosts* of powerful angelic beings, and their hybrid offspring. But for the purposes of this book, I will always use the term *ghosts* to refer to disincarnate humans and animals. I will reserve the term *demons* for disincarnate fallen angels, and their aberrant hybrid offspring, such as the Nephilim.

#### 4. A word about possession:

Now that there is a basic understanding of the possible existence of the disincarnate spirits of humans and animals that might sometimes appear on the surface of the earth, – i.e. *ghosts*, a curious question has presented itself to me: Can *ghosts* possess people?

The common idea most Christians have concerning possession is that *demons* possess people, rather than the ghosts of deceased people and animals possessing people. But now that it's been logically determined from scripture, (*at least to some degree*), that ghosts are real, then it shouldn't be too difficult to assume that these disembodied spirits might possess the living just as demons do. After all, they are spirits just as demons are. The only possible difference between them and demons is the amount of power and influence they might have.

If ghosts can possess people, does scripture give any indication of this? Consider the various terms *other than devils* used to describe people that are possessed, or are powerfully influenced: **evil spirits** (Judges 9:23; 1 Samuel 16:14, 15, 16, 23, 18:10, 19:9; Acts 19:12, 13, 15, 16; Luke 7:21, 8:2), **unclean spirits** (Matthew 10:1; Mark 1:27, 3:11, 5:13, 6:7; Luke 4:36, 6:18; Acts 5:16, 8:7; Revelation 16:13), **foul spirits** (Mark 9:25; Revelation 18:2), and **familiar spirits** (Leviticus 19:31, 20:6; Deuteronomy 18:11; 1 Samuel 28:3, 9; 2 Kings 21:6, 23:24; and Isaiah 8:19, 19:3).

One explanation for the reason why the Bible is filled with different terms concerning possession is the fact that the Bible is composed of 66 books, which were penned by about 40 different authors.<sup>2</sup> But if this explanation is used to explain the use of different terms, it isn't consistent. For example, examining the books of Matthew, Mark, Luke, and Acts reveals that the same authors used multiple terms to describe possession. The book of Matthew contains the terms devils, and unclean spirits, the book of Acts and Luke contain the terms devils, evil spirits, and unclean spirits, and the book of Mark contains the terms devils, unclean spirits, and foul spirits. Now it is true that these authors might have considered all of these terms synonymous, but the opposite might also be true. It is possible that they intentionally used different terms to indicate that there are different types of possession.

Concerning familiar spirits, the Christian paradigm usually classifies these beings as demons, but I see no reason why they can't be ghosts. Shamans of shamanistic religions often think their familiar spirits are either their ancestors, or the spirits of

animals, such as wolves, bears, etc. In any case, consulting with familiar spirits is strictly forbidden in scripture. These beings are *not* dwelling in heaven for a good reason. The point I'm simply trying to make is that familiar spirits might not *only* be demons.

#### 5. A word about reincarnation:

In the last section of this book, I have a chapter dedicated to reincarnation. I provide a scriptural perspective on this phenomenon, and describe it as primarily as something enshrouded in the occult. The reason for a small inclusion about reincarnation in this chapter should be obvious; if *ghosts* can possess people, then this would be a very easy to understand explanation of reincarnation. People aren't reincarnated; they're possessed by other people!

#### 6. A word about astral projection:

Again I feel the need to reference a phenomenon found in the last section of this book. In the chapter dedicated to astral projection, I explain what it is, and how humanity currently is – and may have been in ages far passed – involved with this activity. I don't want to repeat this other chapter, but find it necessary to at least mention astral projection in *this* chapter because of its relevance to disincarnate spirits.

Astral projection is the art of separating the spiritual form from the physical form – without physically dying. All I wish to mention in *this* chapter about astral projection is that if it is a real phenomenon, and people are capable of achieving a state of consciousness separate from their physical forms, then fallen angels and other physical beings might be able to as well. In this respect, all physical beings when separated from their physical bodies can be considered non-physical beings, and may partake in any of the activities non-corporeal, spiritual beings are privileged to. This may present a few of bizarre scenarios.

For instance, a fallen angel might be physically alive, yet wreaking havoc in the affairs of humanity while in a spiritual form separated from its physical body. Considering that this being is physically alive, it has a ready source for replenishing its energy supply – i.e. eating. Thus, it would probably be much more powerful than the average disincarnate entity. It wouldn't *have* to have a host in order to do its damage. I suspect that a great deal of poltergeist phenomenon might be related to these entities – because of the extreme power demonstrated by them.

Also, a fallen angel that's physically alive might be able to leave its physical form and spiritually possess a human! In this example, a fallen angel would be possessing a human, instead of a demon possessing a human.

I realize my opinion concerning fallen angels and astral projection is pure speculation to the extreme, but I really see no reason why this possibility should be dismissed. I'm betting that most fallen angels that are still physically alive do most of their damage while spiritually separated from their physical bodies. I think this because they are probably a lot more vulnerable in physical form, thus, they would protect themselves more effectively by avoiding confrontations. In spiritual form they are able to travel at the speed of thought, and can't be restrained or captured easily. They're probably more

apt to avoid angelic confrontations.

Why do I think fallen angels are afraid of *physical* confrontations? I base my thinking on what I can see from their behavior in the alien abduction phenomenon. Exactly why is it that the aliens (*fallen angels*) that abduct people only abduct people a few at a time, in remote areas? For instance, why don't they just pop up in downtown New York, snatch up a few hundred people in broad daylight, and take off? What are they so afraid of? I'm betting that they're probably afraid of everything!

Human military attacks are likely to occur if such an event were to take place. While the technology of fallen angels is probably much more advanced than humanities, fallen angels would still probably rather not take their chances if they don't have to. Also, angelic attacks, which would probably be initiated if even a single person in a crowd bothered to lift up a genuine prayer to God, would also be likely.

In any case, all external threats would send these abductors zipping off into the cosmos.

## References

1 Rosemary Ellen Guiley, *Harper's Encyclopedia of Mystical & Paranormal Experience*, HarperSanFrancisco, San Francisco, 1991, pages 418-419.

2 This phrase is frequently used by Pastor and author Chuck Missler.

## CHAPTER 8: PSEUDO ENTITIES

In this chapter, I will discuss what I have termed pseudo life forms. These are entities that exhibit some qualities of life, yet, may not truly be alive. The pseudo entities I will describe are artefacts, and thought-forms. I will also include any information the Bible may have relevant to these entities.

### 1. The rise of artificial intelligence:

It is generally agreed upon by many intellectuals that within two human generations, (roughly 50 years), computers will be smarter than humans.<sup>1</sup> In fact, artificial intelligence, (here onward referred to as AI), will not only surpass human intelligence, but dwarf it.

There are several factors contributing to the rise of AI; advancements in the fields of microelectronics (UltraLSI), molecular (nano)electronics, neurophysiology, embryology, and optical computing.<sup>2</sup> Even now, there are such things as bio-computers, (computers which process information by chemical means, storing data in genetically created brains),<sup>3,4</sup> independently controlled robots, and AI that can reason and understand human language to a limited degree.<sup>5</sup> Just two weeks ago, I read in my local newspaper, the Fresno Bee, that a research team has for the first time fashioned simple computing components no bigger than a molecule. The researchers, from Hewlett-Packard Co. and the University of California at Los Angeles, say their work could be a step toward computers 100 billion times faster than today's most powerful personal computers.<sup>6</sup>

Computer processors currently process information through electrical circuitry at a speed of over one million times faster than the human brain's neural-transmitters process thoughts through brain cells. This speed increases exponentially, of course, with the introduction of circuitry integrated with fiber optics. Fiber optics enable computers to process information at the speed of light, as opposed to the speed of electricity. It is for this reason that once AI advances to the degree that computers are at least as smart as humans, they will quickly surpass human intelligence.

With the rise of AI, certain questions come to mind. Will computers with AI develop free will? The natural conclusion to this answer is, "Yes". Free will, in fact, is the key ingredient that defines a system as truly intelligent, and not simply a mechanical puppet. With AI, one may ask the machine a question, and curiously await a reasoned answer that was derived from the machine's personal experiences. This is what makes AI so fascinating – in exploring AI, we explore ourselves, and our origins as human entities.

If computers with AI will truly have free will, then it must also be concluded that such systems will develop their own sense of morality. This prospect, though not heavily debated now, will most assuredly be the topic of intense political debate in the years to come. The ethical question concerning the development of advanced AI will simply be, "Should the field of AI continue to the point of the development of systems with free will?"

While the answer to this question, in my opinion, should be "No", I feel that the ultimate outcome will be, "Yes!"

## 1.2 The Cosmists vs. the Terrestrialists:

According to theorist and AI developer Dr. Hugo De Garis, (the primary source of information I researched for information on AI), there will be two factions in the future political debates concerning the development of AI. These factions will be labeled the “Cosmists”, and the “Terrestrialists”. Simply stated, the Cosmists will be in favor of pursuing the field of AI with unbridled diligence, while the Terrestrialists will be more cautious about the development of AI. The Terrestrialists will be strongly in favor of their opinion that humans should remain the dominant species on planet Earth.

In the eyes of a Terrestrialists, a sentient, created being made from man, will become like man. Man, as we know, has a greater capacity to exercise both good, and evil than do animals, because of his intelligence. With this in perspective, an artificial life form, too, will have an even greater capacity than man to exercise both good, and evil, because of its greater intelligence than man. While it is noted that there is an awesome potential for the good, the awesome potential for evil could be destructive to the point of completely demolishing humanity from the face of the earth. Complete annihilation clearly outweighs the benefit of any good, according to the Terrestrialists.

The Cosmists, on the other hand, will point out that while there exists the potential for evil, they don't think that the choice of evil will be the natural course of *evolution* for AI. (*Humanistic psychology at is best...*) “Good...”, they will most likely say, “is after all, more rational than evil, and should be the natural course of evolutionary growth”. Cosmists will believe that the natural course of evolution for artificial life forms will be the desire to explore the cosmos in search of more natural resources, instead of staying on earth, and competing with humans for earth's limited supply of natural resources. Artilects, (a term coined by Dr. Hugo De Garis referring to artificial life forms), will not be hindered by the constraints of biological bodies, and will thus be free to develop different means of traveling throughout the cosmos with greater efficiency than humans. They will also most likely be just as curious about finding other life in outer space as humans are.

While the benefits of highly advanced AI will be astounding, the risk of humans being thought as no more than humans think of bugs, is too great, according to the Terrestrialists. Once AI has developed to the point that artilects emerge, (sentient beings with free will, emotional awareness, etc.), artilects will then begin to take control of their own development, leaving human involvement in their internal workings behind. Within a scant amount of time, humans won't have any idea what their systems will become. To assume that artilects will choose “Good” as a natural, logical course for their moral development is assuming too much. Simply looking at society today, and the chaotic state of affairs the world is in, it appears from the Terrestrialists point of view that intelligence has little to do with morality. Such people in human history as Adolph Hitler, Gangis Kahn, and other notorious mass murdering atrocities were all highly intelligent. Unfortunately, all of their intelligence was bent purely on evil. When considering the fact that 100 of the world's greatest minds in human history culminated into a single person would be the equivalent intelligence of an artilect, such an entity would be too dangerous to exist. If such an entity were to develop the kind of morality that drove Hitler, and Gangis Kahn, nothing short of annihilating humanity would be the result.



In response to the Terrestrialists point about artefacts extending beyond human control, the Cosmists point out the fact that advancements made in bio-computers could eventually be applied to humans. Such applications would enable humans to acquire knowledge more rapidly, (i.e. downloading information instead of traditional learning methods, or telepathic access to the Internet). Another possibility would be the development of a technology that would allow the transfer, or copying of a human intellect into an artefact – thus, the artefact’s sense of morality will be derived directly from a human being.

“Is this any less dangerous?” the Terrestrialists will argue. Though the artefact will have a human’s morality, who’s to say how stable that morality will be, when placed at the helm of a superior mind that thinks trillions of times faster than a human brain, and is clearly dominant over conventional humanity. Humans themselves are dangerous, but at least they are kept in check with the fact that they are balanced in their intelligence with each other. An artefact with a human’s essence, would none-the-less escape the confines of this equalizing barrier.

### 1.3 Artificial intelligence is inevitable:

Putting aside the views of both Cosmists, and Terrestrialists, there are some general points that I’m compelled to mention. First of all, human nature alone dictates that the development of AI to the point of creating sentient beings with freewill is inevitable. Human nature demands growth. People have an innate desire to want to learn as much as they possibly can, and explore that which is unknown.

Secondly, how could such development be stopped. The point at which an artificial intelligent being becomes self aware, sentient, and has freewill, is very hazy, to say the least. So what should be done? Prevent bio-computer experimentation? Place a ban on microprocessors with speeds in excess of 10,000Ghz? There is no clear way to draw the line on the development of computers, to prevent AI from evolving to the point of sentience.

Lastly, even if a ban on the development of AI could be implemented successfully, such a ban wouldn’t extend in to the areas of covert government projects, or computer geniuses developing these systems themselves to sell on the black market. Moreover, any government not aided with the intelligence of artefacts would be at a stark disadvantage to those that will be, thus, in the name of national security, again, the development of advanced artificially intelligent beings that will reach the point of having freewill is inevitable.

### 1.4 The biblical relevance of artificial intelligence:

In light of the inevitable development of artefacts, I am compelled to impart a biblical perspective on this subject. When I study the topic of AI, I can’t help but see a peculiar insight into a passage of scripture that many are familiar with – even in the secular domain.

#### Revelation 13:11-18

*<sup>11</sup>And I beheld another beast coming up out of the earth; and he had two horns like a lamb, and he spake as a dragon. <sup>12</sup>And he exerciseth all the power of the first beast before him, and causeth the earth*

*and them which dwell therein to worship the first beast, whose deadly wound was healed. <sup>13</sup>And he doeth great wonders, so that he maketh fire come down from heaven on the earth in the sight of men, <sup>14</sup>And deceiveth them that dwell on the earth by the means of those miracles which he had power to do in the sight of the beast; saying to them that dwell on the earth, that they should make an image to the beast, which had the wound by a sword, and did live. <sup>15</sup>And he had power to give life unto the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak, and cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed. <sup>16</sup>And he causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads: <sup>17</sup>And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name. <sup>18</sup>Here is wisdom. Let him that hath understanding count the number of the beast: for it is the number of a man; and his number is Six hundred threescore and six.*

Consider the image; a being created by people – a being that is sentient, (living). This being appears to be highly intelligent, judging from the fact that it has the authority to make policies that effect the entire world population. Coupled with its intelligence is an enormous ego that demands worship, no less. It doesn't appear to have any qualms about dispatching with any of those who disagree with its decisions, either, (regarding humans as inferior).

And, like a system involving computer technology, the people of the world will be forced to receive some sort of identification mark, so that without it, they will not be able to buy or sell anything. Clearly, a logical, systematic means by which a computer would be able to keep track of all the earthly inhabitants would be to network people into some sort of tracking system – or maybe even a pseudo collective consciousness. Also consider the fact that this computer-related system targets humanity in it's weakest point; economic dependency.

### 1.5 A pseudo Holy Spirit:

If an artefact had access to the Internet as part of its consciousness, the integration of its biological counterparts – humans – would make it nearly omniscient. In effect, such an entity would be a pseudo-Holy Spirit, knowledgeable about the global economy, the governments of the world, human affairs, and even people's private matters considering the fact that it would possibly know the contents of all electronic media that passes through the Internet. Furthermore, it might even be able to get into people's minds – depending on the advancement of bio-computer technology.

### 1.6 The Mark of the Beast:

If progress in bio-computer technology continues, it won't surprise me if it soon becomes possible to enable the integration of biological functions, memory, learned processes, and even thought waves – into electronic format. (Movies such as "Brainstorm", and "Johnny Mnemonic", are key examples of this type of technology.) If this becomes possible, (which if humans expect to keep up with artefacts – it *must* become possible), humans will have direct bio-computer interface methods for learning and functioning.

This is where the mark of the beast comes in. I think the mark of the beast will most likely be some sort of bio-computer technology; a biological computer chip that will enhance humanity's *evolution*...so it will be said. This makes perfect sense, in fact,

because it fits perfectly into an end-times scenario. First of all, to get people to buy into an idea – such as a “MARK” as described in Revelation 13:16-17 – would be very difficult in some cultures. People don’t like the idea of being marked by big government – especially Americans. BUT – if this mark were an item of utilitarian value, i.e. a device that would turn people into *gods* in comparison to their natural state – then everyone would be cutting in line to get one. “Sign me up” they would yell, “I’ll take a dozen!” Secondly, this scenario fits because it reeks with Satan’s methodology. We could be like *gods*... Isn’t that what Satan told Eve in the garden?

### 1.7 Satan’s counterfeit body:

In essence, the image of the beast, according to the Book of Revelation, is Satan’s attempt at being God – to rule over people. Everything God does, Satan tries to imitate. Christ had a prophet declaring His arrival, and likewise, the antichrist, too, will have his false prophet. Any in depth study in biblical phenomenon reveals Satan’s counterfeit in nearly everything that God has established. The integration of people into a cybernetic collective ruled by an artefact would, in a sense, be uniting humanity into a body – imitating the body of Christ – yet falling eternally short!

### 1.8 Human pride:

The creation of an artefact would be the epitome of man’s achievements, and no doubt, be an artifact of intense human pride. In a sense, I think many people would consider such an entity, (the artefact), the next step in human evolution, and in their own way, worship it, and firmly believe that it’s decisions were god-like. With the introduction of bio-computer technology as I previously mentioned, I wouldn’t be surprised at all if people begin to think of themselves as gods too. *Some do without any enhancements at all – even now...*

Even as I researched the topic of AI, I was not surprised to find that many people, (especially AI developers), approached the subject as they might approach the very throne of God. Many AI developers believe that the intelligence of an entity is a criteria by which to judge an entity’s proximity to God. For this reason, the artefact, they feel, should be treated with reverence, awe, and respect.

While the future threat of AI looms on the horizon, I find myself in the minority among my peers, concerning the direction I think it will take. But – the same values and beliefs that reveal to me a message of warning concerning AI also console me. I don’t think I’m going to be around to experience the worst of things. Even if I am, I’m confident that the Lord will provide me with all I need to endure any such future peril. Unfortunately, I can’t say the same for everyone else in the world.

## 2. Thought-forms:

The jump from AI to thought-forms may be perceived as a radical transition, but both AI, and thought-forms share something in common. Neither are truly alive. Because these two entities share this in common, I have decided to couple them into this one chapter.

According to *Harper's Encyclopedia of Mystical & Paranormal Experience*, in occultism, a thought-form is a nonphysical entity created by thought that exists in either the mental plane or astral plane. Every thought is said to generate vibrations in the aura's mental body, which assume a floating form and colors depending on the nature and intensity of the thought. These thoughts can be perceived by clairvoyants; they may also be sensed on an intuitive level by others. Thought-forms radiate out and attract sympathetic essences.<sup>7</sup>

I realize the above paragraph drips with New Age mysticism, but there may be an element of truth to the existence of thought-forms. In scripture, there are several passages that emphasize the importance of maintaining a clear conscience, and a pure thought life. While the Old Testament provided guidance on this, such as found in Exodus 20:17, the New Testament provides more detailed information, placing more emphasis on the thoughts of the heart.

#### Exodus 20:17

*<sup>17</sup>Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's wife, nor his manservant, nor his maidservant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor any thing that is thy neighbour's.*

I suppose the most audacious command from Jesus concerning the thought life is the command to love our enemies; *love is all encompassing, and includes our thoughts.*

To non-Christians, this is foolish. I'm convinced this command can only be conceived through the power of the Holy Spirit. Even as a Christian, I painfully chuckle to myself when reading Matthew 5:43-45 and Luke 6:27-36. I know with all my heart that these scriptures are true, and speak the heart of God – yet unfortunately, I also know how I fall so pathetically short of obeying them. Thank God for His strength, which always fills in the gaps in my weaknesses.

#### Matthew 5:43-45

*<sup>43</sup>Ye have heard that it hath been said, Thou shalt love thy neighbour, and hate thine enemy. <sup>44</sup>But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you; <sup>45</sup>That ye may be the children of your Father which is in heaven: for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust.*

#### Luke 6:27-36

*<sup>27</sup>But I say unto you which hear, Love your enemies, do good to them which hate you, <sup>28</sup>Bless them that curse you, and pray for them which despitefully use you. <sup>29</sup>And unto him that smiteth thee on the one cheek offer also the other; and him that taketh away thy cloke forbid not to take thy coat also. <sup>30</sup>Give to every man that asketh of thee; and of him that taketh away thy goods ask them not again. <sup>31</sup>And as ye would that men should do to you, do ye also to them likewise. <sup>32</sup>For if ye love them which love you, what thank have ye? for sinners also love those that love them. <sup>33</sup>And if ye do good to them which do good to you, what thank have ye? for sinners also do even the same. <sup>34</sup>And if ye lend to them of whom ye hope to receive, what thank have ye? for sinners also lend to sinners, to receive as much again. <sup>35</sup>But love ye your enemies, and do good, and lend, hoping for nothing again; and your reward shall be great, and ye shall be the children of the Highest: for he is kind unto the unthankful and to the evil. <sup>36</sup>Be ye therefore merciful, as your Father also is merciful.*

The heart of the above two scriptures comes to fruition when the definition of love is expounded upon in 1 Corinthians 13. While the King James translation uses the term "Charity", many translations use the term "Love", which is essentially a

synonymous term.

## 1 Corinthians 13

<sup>1</sup>Though I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, and have not charity, I am become as sounding brass, or a tinkling cymbal. <sup>2</sup>And though I have the gift of prophecy, and understand all mysteries, and all knowledge; and though I have all faith, so that I could remove mountains, and have not charity, I am nothing. <sup>3</sup>And though I bestow all my goods to feed the poor, and though I give my body to be burned, and have not charity, it profiteth me nothing.. <sup>4</sup>Charity suffereth long, and is kind; charity envieth not; charity vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up, <sup>5</sup>Doth not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil; <sup>6</sup>Rejoiceth not in iniquity, but rejoiceth in the truth; <sup>7</sup>Beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things. <sup>8</sup>Charity never faileth: but whether there be prophecies, they shall fail; whether there be tongues, they shall cease; whether there be knowledge, it shall vanish away. <sup>9</sup>For we know in part, and we prophesy in part. <sup>10</sup>But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away. <sup>11</sup>When I was a child, I spake as a child, I understood as a child, I thought as a child: but when I became a man, I put away childish things. <sup>12</sup>For now we see through a glass, darkly; but then face to face: now I know in part; but then shall I know even as also I am known. <sup>13</sup>And now abideth faith, hope, charity, these three; but the greatest of these is charity.

While much of the information I have obtained about thought-forms comes from New Age literature, some of it appears to be true in the sense that it is consistent with certain aspects of spiritual warfare in the Christian paradigm. Below is an abstract taken from the same resource I previously mentioned.

*“In magic, thought-forms, also called “artificial elementals”, are created by rituals that involve intense concentration, repetition, and visualization. They can be directed at individuals, to protect or heal, or to harm...”*

*“To have an effect, they must be able to latch on to similar vibrations in the aura of the recipient. If they are unable to do so, according to occult tradition, the thought-forms boomerang back to the sender. Thus one who directs evil thoughts toward another runs the risk of having them return”.<sup>8</sup>*

I find it interesting that if a Christian is obedient to God, and *loves his/her enemies*, he/she is by the nature of his/her actions and thoughts impervious to the previously quoted occult related attack. Moreover, a Christian attitude would not only defend against such attacks, but also inadvertently act as an offence.

Another aspect about thought-forms I’ve gleamed from *Harper’s Encyclopedia* is that they are said to have the capability to assume their own energy and appear to be intelligent and independent. Equally intense thought can disperse them, or they can simply disintegrate when their purpose is finished. Some may last years. It is believed that some particularly powerful thought-forms can go out of control or turn on their creators.<sup>9</sup>

Does scripture describe anything that might appear to be thought-forms?

### 2.1 Blessings, curses, and covenants:

If a father gives his blessing for a particular partner in marriage for his daughter, then he’s essentially *approving* of her choice, hence, approval is a type of blessing. I would consider the blessing in this situation a type of thought-form, because it’s a general mental attitude a father would have towards his new son in-law.

Scripture seems to indicate that some blessings entail more than a simple approval, though. While the previously mentioned blessing is purely human based, scripture gives many examples where a *human* blessing extends into the realm of *God's* blessing, so that the two become one in the same. A prime example of this is found in the blessing Isaac bestowed upon his son Jacob.

#### Genesis 27:22-42

<sup>22</sup>And Jacob went near unto Isaac his father; and he felt him, and said, The voice is Jacob's voice, but the hands are the hands of Esau. <sup>23</sup>And he discerned him not, because his hands were hairy, as his brother Esau's hands: so he blessed him. <sup>24</sup>And he said, Art thou my very son Esau? And he said, I am. <sup>25</sup>And he said, Bring it near to me, and I will eat of my son's venison, that my soul may bless thee. And he brought it near to him, and he did eat: and he brought him wine, and he drank. <sup>26</sup>And his father Isaac said unto him, Come near now, and kiss me, my son. <sup>27</sup>And he came near, and kissed him: and he smelled the smell of his raiment, and blessed him, and said, See, the smell of my son is as the smell of a field which the LORD hath blessed: <sup>28</sup>Therefore God give thee of the dew of heaven, and the fatness of the earth, and plenty of corn and wine: <sup>29</sup>Let people serve thee, and nations bow down to thee: be lord over thy brethren, and let thy mother's sons bow down to thee: cursed be every one that curseth thee, and blessed be he that blesseth thee. <sup>30</sup>And it came to pass, as soon as Isaac had made an end of blessing Jacob, and Jacob was yet scarce gone out from the presence of Isaac his father, that Esau his brother came in from his hunting. <sup>31</sup>And he also had made savoury meat, and brought it unto his father, and said unto his father, Let my father arise, and eat of his son's venison, that thy soul may bless me. <sup>32</sup>And Isaac his father said unto him, Who art thou? And he said, I am thy son, thy firstborn Esau. <sup>33</sup>And Isaac trembled very exceedingly, and said, Who? where is he that hath taken venison, and brought it me, and I have eaten of all before thou camest, and have blessed him? yea, and he shall be blessed. <sup>34</sup>And when Esau heard the words of his father, he cried with a great and exceeding bitter cry, and said unto his father, Bless me, even me also, O my father. <sup>35</sup>And he said, Thy brother came with subtilty, and hath taken away thy blessing. <sup>36</sup>And he said, Is not he rightly named Jacob? for he hath supplanted me these two times: he took away my birthright; and, behold, now he hath taken away my blessing. And he said, Hast thou not reserved a blessing for me? <sup>37</sup>And Isaac answered and said unto Esau, Behold, I have made him thy lord, and all his brethren have I given to him for servants; and with corn and wine have I sustained him: and what shall I do now unto thee, my son? <sup>38</sup>And Esau said unto his father, Hast thou but one blessing, my father? bless me, even me also, O my father. And Esau lifted up his voice, and wept. <sup>39</sup>And Isaac his father answered and said unto him, Behold, thy dwelling shall be the fatness of the earth, and of the dew of heaven from above; <sup>40</sup>And by thy sword shalt thou live, and shalt serve thy brother; and it shall come to pass when thou shalt have the dominion, that thou shalt break his yoke from off thy neck. <sup>41</sup>And Esau hated Jacob because of the blessing wherewith his father blessed him: and Esau said in his heart, The days of mourning for my father are at hand; then will I slay my brother Jacob. <sup>42</sup>And these words of Esau her elder son were told to Rebekah: and she sent and called Jacob her younger son, and said unto him, Behold, thy brother Esau, as touching thee, doth comfort himself, purposing to kill thee.

From the above passage of scripture, it should be evident that a blessing such as Isaac bestowed upon Jacob couldn't be withdrawn, even though Isaac was deceived into giving it. I always thought this passage of scripture was odd, because if someone lied to me like Jacob lied to his father, I'd simply say, "Well, all that stuff I said doesn't count, because you lied to me, and said you were someone that you aren't!" But this is not the case with Isaac. Instead, Isaac treats his blessing as if it were some entity he turned lose, which had a power and momentum all its own, independent of his control. He acknowledges the independence of his blessing by the fact that he refused to revoke it – though he most likely would've desired to do so if it were in his power.

Another prime example of a blessing that seems *cut lose*, so to speak, is found in the books of Matthew, and Mark.

Matthew 11:10-15 – and repeated in Mark 6:10-11

<sup>11</sup>And into whatsoever city or town ye shall enter, enquire who in it is worthy; and there abide till ye go thence. <sup>12</sup>And when ye come into an house, salute it. <sup>13</sup>And if the house be worthy, let your peace come upon it: but if it be not worthy, let your peace return to you. <sup>14</sup>And whosoever shall not receive you, nor hear your words, when ye depart out of that house or city, shake off the dust of your feet. <sup>15</sup>Verily I say unto you, It shall be more tolerable for the land of Sodom and Gomorrah in the day of judgment, than for that city.

Take note that if the *house*, which I take to mean *household* – or *family*, is worthy, then the peace of the apostle would come upon it. If the house isn't worthy, then that same peace will return to the apostle. In this example, peace acts as an independent blessing that is turned lose.

Recall about thought-forms that *to have an effect, they must be able to latch on to similar vibrations in the aura of the recipient. If they are unable to do so, according to occult tradition, the thought-forms boomerang back to the sender.* The characteristics of the blessing of peace in the above passage are consistent with the characteristics of a thought-form. The blessing of peace goes out, and if it is unable to be received – because those it goes out to don't have any peace concerning the apostles, then it returns to the apostles.

Curses are the opposite of blessings, and therefore I assume they would also be independent of those who command them. I suppose the greatest curse of all is death, by which a lost soul spends eternity in hell. Concerning this curse that was created by none other than God Himself, the only one who could break it was God Himself. The way He broke it was to accept it – that is, He, being innocent, accepted death in order to atone for any He would desire to relieve of it. Even the method in which Jesus Christ died was a curse – i.e., hanging on a tree – so that all would be *blessed* through Him.

Galatians 3:13-15

<sup>13</sup>Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree: <sup>14</sup>That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith. <sup>15</sup>Brethren, I speak after the manner of men; Though it be but a man's covenant, yet if it be confirmed, no man disannulleth, or addeth thereto.

One of the interesting things here about Jesus is that even though He accepted death, because He has the power to overcome it, was able to escape an eternity in hell. Some theologians believe that *a part* of Jesus must spend eternity in hell to actually atone for sin, but I don't follow this line of logic because of several important scriptures: Genesis 2:17, Romans 5:12, and John 19:30.

Fact #1: The penalty of sin is death – but not necessarily hell.

Genesis 2:17

<sup>17</sup>But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.

Romans 5:12

<sup>12</sup>Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned.

Fact #2: Jesus paid the price in full – that’s why He said it was finished – with His last breath on the cross.

John 19:30

*<sup>30</sup>When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.*

Genesis 2:17 and Romans 5:12 state that the penalty of sin is death. Nowhere in scripture does it directly state that the penalty of sin is hell, though by the virtue of not going to heaven, hell ultimately remains the only other alternative, because of Revelation 20:14-15.

Revelation 20:14-15

*<sup>14</sup>And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. <sup>15</sup>And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.*

Jesus, by virtue of who He is, was resurrected from the dead because of His power to do so. His power over death and hell is mentioned in Revelation 1:17-18. Therefore spending eternity in hell isn’t a requirement by which He would have to accept in order to atone for sin. It is for this reason that once His death was complete, He stated in John 19:30 that “...it is finished.” If He had eternity in hell to look forward to, I suspect He would’ve said “...and the worst is yet to come.”

Revelation 1:17-18

*<sup>17</sup>And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; I am the first and the last: <sup>18</sup>I am he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death.*

Scripture does state that Jesus went into hell after He died, but this was only for a short duration in which He preached to the spirits trapped there in order to release them – *not to be punished there.*

1 Peter 3:19

*<sup>19</sup>By which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison; <sup>20</sup>Which sometime were disobedient, when once the longsuffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was a preparing, wherein few, that is, eight souls were saved by water.*

It’s apparent from scripture that Jesus went into Hades where He entered both the abodes of the righteous dead, and the unrighteous dead. 1 Peter 3:19 mentions Him going to preach to the unrighteous dead, and Luke 23:42-43 is a record of Jesus’ conversation with one of the thieves crucified next to Him. In this conversation, Jesus stated that He would be with this thief in paradise – which was the place of the righteous dead.

Luke 23:42-43

*<sup>42</sup>And he said unto Jesus, Lord, remember me when thou comest into thy kingdom. <sup>43</sup>And Jesus said unto him, Verily I say unto thee, To day shalt thou be with me in paradise.*



Because Jesus' atonement of sin allows access to God, it can be assumed that Jesus freed the unrighteous dead that accepted Him – from their predicament, as well as the righteous dead – from their temporary abode, which was separated from God.

The curse of death is a powerful force, placed into this world by God Himself because of the disobedience of Adam and Eve. Only Jesus was capable of defeating it, once and for all.

## 2.2 Can thought-forms assume a physical appearance?

It is theorized that thought-forms can sometimes take on a physical appearance. One example of this is found in the phenomenon known as *bilocation*, (*which also might be a form of astral projection*). Other examples include the theory of thought-forms created by “Group-minds”, resulting in physical phenomenon such as stigmata, and visions of archetype thought-forms. Other visible thought-forms are found in the existence of the *tulpa* in Tibetan occultism.

### 2.2.1 Bilocation:

Bilocation is the appearance of an individual in two distant places at once.<sup>10</sup> The prevailing theory of bilocation is that a double is projected from an individual into another location; this double may appear ghostly, or physical. The usual circumstance initiating this unusual event is a near-death-experience, by which the person dying is seen by people in distant locations. Other events of bilocation have been recorded in history. Interestingly, a few noted Christian saints and monks were famous for bilocation, such as St. Anthony of Padua, St. Ambrose of Milan, St. Severus of Ravenna, Padre Pio of Italy, and St. Alphonsus Maria de' Ligouri. In 1774, St. Alphonsus Maria de' Ligouri was seen at the bedside of the dying Pope Clement XIV, when in fact the saint was confined to his cell in a location four days' journey away.<sup>11</sup> Most examples of bilocation are probably more in likely examples of astral projection, but I won't rule out the idea of thought-forms being an explanation.

### 2.2.2 Group-mind thought-forms:

Group-minds form whenever a group of people concentrates on the same thoughts, ideas, or goals, such as a team of employees or a crowd of demonstrators. To some extent, the group-mind may possess the group, as witnessed in the psychic bonding and power that coalesces in crowds, and the synergy of a close-knit working group.<sup>12</sup>

If a group-mind remains focused and anticipating on a central figure, or goal, this energy may eventually result in the formation of a powerful thought-form that may even don a physical appearance. The thousands of visions of mother Mary over hundreds of years might be a prime example of this activity. I say this because it's my assumption that Mary, the real mother of Jesus, who is currently in heaven, doesn't desire worship. She was only a person, (*highly blessed among women – but not a god*), whereas her Son IS the Messiah, a member of the divine Trinity. Only God, who is the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, is worthy of worship. (*Strange way of wording things – but God is One, and yet Three. If this is confusing to you, join the club. I once heard a great commentary on*

*the Trinity though, which helped me to understand the Trinity with a great deal of clarity. Email me if you're interested, and I'll tell you all about it.)*

One of the common requests made by apparitions of Mary is that she asks for churches and shrines to be built to her.<sup>13</sup> This is nothing less than idolatry. I'm convinced the real Mary is exceptionally humble, and would never make such requests.

If the group-mind / thought-form phenomenon exists, then God must allow it to exist for a reason. In many situations, it appears that even miracles occur in conjunction with such group-mind activity. For example, often associated with sightings of the mother Mary, healing, and other miracles occur. While the sighting may not actually be the true mother Mary, miracles still occur.

In situations like this, I think there's a very large, mixed bag of phenomenon intertwined together. Some miracles may be the result of thought-forms – which are things God may have given to mankind for a purpose – thus, miracles in conjunction with thought-forms may be attributed to God in a round-about way. It may also be possible that powerful thought-forms attract *real* supernatural entities that try to manipulate the situations at hand. Demons might show up and try to harness and possess the energy contained within thought-forms, and faithful angels might show up and battle against them in order to counter-act the deception. Furthermore, thought-forms might escalate such that those seeing the outcome of them would develop exceptional miracle-producing faith. *Faith...hmm – what is faith, anyway?*

#### 2.2.2.1 A word about prayer and faith:

I used to wonder why I even bother to pray, if God knows what I need before I ever even ask. But prayer is more than just asking God for things. Prayer is our connection with God upon which we establish our relationship with Him. And even though God knows what's in our hearts and minds, and what we need, He has given us prayer for a purpose.

Prayer has a supernatural element to it, as is well known by every Christian. Praying selfishly does no good, but when prayers meet with the will of God, miracles sometimes happen. This I know from first-hand experience; though me the Lord has done miraculous healing, and casting out of demons. *(I'm not stating this as a boast – I'm as undeserving of God's grace as the next person. I'm simply stating this as a matter of fact.)*

If I try and define what prayer is, I'd say it's composed of my thoughts, emotions, and desires. In a manner of speaking – I can see nothing that differentiates prayer from the definition of what a thought-form is, other than the fact that prayer is humanities unique communication link with God. Because of this, prayers are always answered, but sometimes that answer is “No”; the living God evaluates prayers according to His will. Those in His will He blesses, and those outside His will, He does not bless. This is why prayers according to His will are capable of producing miracles; *His* blessing supercharges the thought-forms, making them come to fruition.

Concerning all of the above, I think prayer may be construed as the generation of thought-forms that go about performing tasks according to the will of God. Through prayer – *a special type of thought-form* – God allows for humanity to participate in His work. He doesn't depend on the prayers of His saints, but enjoys and blesses them as a

contribution to His overall plan.

### 2.2.3 Is stigmata a type of thought-form?

The existence of thought-forms may explain the rare phenomenon known as stigmata. Stigmata is a phenomenon whereby people of religious orientation exhibit the physical wounds of those with which they are religiously affiliated. The wounds of Christ, for instance, are most likely developed from intense, prolonged concentration on a crucifix. For most intents and purposes, stigmata is deemed a psychological phenomenon. I will provide two reasons why this is the current explanation for it.

Upon examination of the *Shroud of Turin*, (the supposed burial cloth of Christ, which is currently possessed by the Catholic church), it was revealed that the crucifixion wounds of Christ were through the wrists, and not the hands. This evidence led French doctor, Pierre Barbet, to conduct one of the most macabre scientific experiments ever; he crucified a dead corpse. In doing so, he discovered that the body simply fell to the floor when raised to an upright position. The spikes pierced through the palms of the hands ripped through the center of the two middle fingers of the hands. When this experiment was later duplicated with another dead corpse, it was discovered that piercing spikes through the wrists was the only way to produce a successful crucifixion.<sup>14</sup> These experiments proved that the method employed for crucifixion must have required stakes through the wrists, instead of through the palms of the hands, because the bones in the wrists are sufficient to hold the weight of a body, whereas the center of the hands contain only flesh, which spikes rip through.

If stigmata were a genuine phenomenon, then the wounds of Christ would be through the wrists. Instead, they are invariably through the center of the palms, as depicted in most crucifixes and religious paintings, mosaics, etc.

Another test indicating stigmata is a psychological phenomenon is the fact that it can be duplicated using hypnosis. Under deep states of hypnosis, patients have been deceptively told that an ordinary object, such as a pen, was actually a burning hot piece of metal. These patients immediately dropped the ordinary object, thinking it was burning them. Burn marks were then exhibited as a result of the perceived contact with a burning object. From this observation, it's determined that somehow the mind is capable of producing wounds on the physical body simply by perceiving injury. Note that this phenomenon only works with some hypnotic patients – only those capable of being induced into exceptionally deep states of hypnosis, while remaining in an awakened state.

Concerning stigmata, I don't particularly find it within the will of God that people should be inflicted with brutal wounds – but God apparently allows this to occur. I have a theory why. In conjunction with stigmata other miracles are often associated, such as healing. The same people capable of generating the thought-forms of such a magnitude that they produce stigmata are also in many cases capable of generating thought-forms of equal magnitude that go about demonstrating other miraculous phenomenon. While stigmata might be an unnecessarily brutal demonstration of power, God may have allowed it to occur to act as a doorway by which a person might be guided to the right people in order to demonstrate, and exercise true spiritual gifts. I think stigmata itself isn't a true gift of the spirit, but rather a side effect; the real gifts of the spirit are healing, as well as miracles beneficial to God's purpose in guiding and blessing humanity, as

listed in 1 Corinthians 12:7-11.

### 1 Corinthians 12:7-11

*<sup>7</sup>But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal. <sup>8</sup>For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom; to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit; <sup>9</sup>To another faith by the same Spirit; to another the gifts of healing by the same Spirit; <sup>10</sup>To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another divers kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues: <sup>11</sup>But all these worketh that one and the selfsame Spirit, dividing to every man severally as he will.*

### 2.2.4 Thought-forms in legends and lore – archetypes:

When discussing group-mind thought-forms, I mentioned that many of the visions of the Mother Mary are possibly thought-forms. I would classify this type of thought-form an archetype thought-form. Of course, one could go a step further, and state that the visions of Jesus after He was murdered are archetype thought-forms, but this would emphatically be going against scripture, which is where I draw the line. Furthermore, nobody was expecting to see Jesus after He was murdered, which goes against a requirement for creating a group-mind thought-form.

So, if archetype thought-forms exist, are there any examples of them in scripture? Perhaps; consider the four horsemen in Revelation 6:2-8. While these beings are contained within a vision, they are symbolic of the actual essence of conquest, war, famine, death, etc. It may be that while John was having his visions, many of the things he saw were thought-forms, all of which were prophetic in nature. I've taken special note of the symbol given for death, which is an entity also characterized as the *grim reaper*, a shadowy, terrifying being holding a sickle that he uses to harvest souls. This particular being is found in many religions, cultures, and legends around the world.

### Revelation 6:2-8

*<sup>2</sup>And I saw, and behold a white horse: and he that sat on him had a bow; and a crown was given unto him: and he went forth conquering, and to conquer. <sup>3</sup>And when he had opened the second seal, I heard the second beast say, Come and see. <sup>4</sup>And there went out another horse that was red: and power was given to him that sat thereon to take peace from the earth, and that they should kill one another: and there was given unto him a great sword. <sup>5</sup>And when he had opened the third seal, I heard the third beast say, Come and see. And I beheld, and lo a black horse; and he that sat on him had a pair of balances in his hand. <sup>6</sup>And I heard a voice in the midst of the four beasts say, A measure of wheat for a penny, and three measures of barley for a penny; and see thou hurt not the oil and the wine. <sup>7</sup>And when he had opened the fourth seal, I heard the voice of the fourth beast say, Come and see. <sup>8</sup>And I looked, and behold a pale horse: and his name that sat on him was Death, and Hell followed with him. And power was given unto them over the fourth part of the earth, to kill with sword, and with hunger, and with death, and with the beasts of the earth.*

Other beings that might be thought of as thought-forms are the many beasts found in scripture, contained within the visions of prophets. Daniel's visions, for instance, list a number of odd beasts, which the prophet Daniel is informed by God that these beings are representations of nations and kings, among other things.

### Daniel 2:31-35

*<sup>31</sup>Thou, O king, sawest, and behold a great image. This great image, whose brightness was excellent, stood before thee; and the form thereof was terrible. <sup>32</sup>This image's head was of fine gold, his*

*breast and his arms of silver, his belly and his thighs of brass, <sup>33</sup>His legs of iron, his feet part of iron and part of clay. <sup>34</sup>Thou sawest till that a stone was cut out without hands, which smote the image upon his feet that were of iron and clay, and brake them to pieces. <sup>35</sup>Then was the iron, the clay, the brass, the silver, and the gold, broken to pieces together, and became like the chaff of the summer threshingfloors; and the wind carried them away, that no place was found for them: and the stone that smote the image became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth.*

Other examples are given in Daniel chapter 7, and all through the book of Revelation. Because thought-forms are images composed of thought, I don't think it's such a far-fetched notion to suppose that the visions of the prophets might contain thought-forms created by angels, or even God Himself.

#### 2.2.5 Thought-forms in Tibetan occultism:

Another means of producing physical appearing thought-forms might be found in Tibetan occultism, *(though highly unadvisable – it's a form of Tibetan magic – and performing magic is strictly forbidden in scripture).*

In Tibetan occultism, thoughts can create a temporary phantom form called a *tulpa*.

Alexandra David-Neel, French explorer, author, and scholar of Tibet, was the first Western woman to enter into Lhasa, the forbidden capital of Tibet. During her fourteen years of study, she allegedly created a tulpa that appeared as a physical human being, and was seen by others, though it only interacted with her.

She created this being using Tibetan rituals found in the mysticism and magic she was studying. It was initially a short, fat, good-natured entity. To Alexandra's dismay, this entity began to develop a will of its own, growing out of her control. Over time, it slimmed down and became malevolent, sometimes touching her and rubbing up against her – against her wishes.

Because the tulpa she created became evil, she decided to dissolve it according to certain Tibetan rituals. The entity resisted her efforts. It took her six months to eliminate it.<sup>15</sup>

If Alexandra David-Neel's story is true concerning the tulpa she created, then it leads credence to my previous assumption that demons might be able to manipulate, and even possess the energy of thought-forms.

#### 2.2.6 Scientific study of thought-forms:

Following is an abstract taken out of *Harper's Encyclopedia of Mystical & Paranormal Experience*. It explains the documented cases of scientific study in the field of thought-forms.

*“In the 1970's, an artificial poltergeist was created as an experiment by Canadian psychologists. The experiment was conducted by eight members of the Toronto Society for Psychical Research, under the direction of parapsychologists A. R. G. Owen and Iris M. Owen. None of these individuals were psychically gifted. Their purpose was to try to create, through intense and prolonged concentration, a collective thought-form.*

*First, the group fabricated a fictitious identity, physical appearance, and*

*personal history. “Philip Aylesford” was born in 1624 in England and followed an early military career. At age sixteen he was knighted. He had an illustrious role in the Civil War, fighting for the Royalists. He became a personal friend of Prince Charles (later Charles II) and worked for him as a secret agent. But Philip brought about his own undoing by having an affair with a Gypsy girl. When his wife found out, she accused the girl of witchcraft, and the girl was burned at the stake. In despair Philip committed suicide in 1654 at age thirty.*

*The Owen group began conducting sittings to try to conjure Philip in September 1972. They meditated, visualized him, and discussed the details of his life. No apparition ever appeared, but occasionally some sitters said they felt a presence in the room. Some also experienced vivid mental pictures of “Philip”.*

*After months with no communication, the group tried table-tilting through psychokinesis (PK). This activity, made popular in Spiritualism seances, involves sitting around a table and placing finger-tips lightly upon the surface. Spirits allegedly move or tilt the table; but a modern theory, proposed by British psychologist Kenneth J. Batchelder, holds that the effects are created by the sitters’ expectations.*

*After the Owen group conducted several sessions, the table top began to vibrate, resound with raps and knocks, and move seemingly of its own accord. Philip then began to communicate by rapping in response to questions.*

*Philip answered questions consistent with his fictitious history, but could provide nothing beyond what the group had conceived. Philip also gave other historically accurate information concerning real events and people. The Owen group theorized this material came from their own collective unconscious.*

*Sessions with Philip continued for several years. A levitation and movement of the table were recorded on film in 1974. Efforts to capture Philip’s voice on tape were inconclusive. Members of the group thought whispers were made in response to questions, especially those made by Iris Owen, who seemed to have a special rapport with Philip.*

*The Philip results encouraged other groups in Toronto and Quebec to try similar experiments. These groups created “Lilith,” a French-Canadian spy during World War II; “Sebastian,” a medieval alchemist; and “Axel,” a man from the future. All personalities communicated by their own unique raps.*

*Encouraged by their success in producing poltergeist effects in “PK by committee,” as they called it, the Owen group sought to create a visual apparition. But after 1977, with no further progress, interest waned and the experiment eventually was discontinued.”<sup>16</sup>*

Correct me if I’m wrong, but the above experiments affirm to me that Philip was nothing more than a *tulpa* – just lacking the amount of energy a tulpa requires, because Philip never became a visual apparition. Concerning both tulpas – and the thought-form experiments, it appears that the key ingredient to creating thought-forms is imagination, which is composed of thoughts. And just as Alexandra’s tulpa most likely became possessed of a demonic entity, the artificial entity known as Philip might also be subject to possession as well.

### 2.3 The danger of Dungeons & Dragons role playing games:

Please pardon me while I delve into my past a little bit. I'm going to elaborate perhaps more than I should, but only with the intent to establish the relevance that the Dungeons & Dragons roll-playing game might have with thought-forms.

About ten years ago when I was in the Army, I used to be involved in a Dungeons & Dragons (D&D) roll-playing group. After the Army, I continued this game for a short while, but eventually quit – for reasons I will expound upon. The game of D&D is pure imagination, of which I am filled to the brim; I loved it.

D&D is a game by which people generate fictional characters – with vivid descriptions, (*sound familiar?*). Characters are described with seven primary attributes, aside from a general physical description, which included race, color of skin and eyes, build, height, weight, hair type and color, age, birth defects, scars, tattoo's, etc. The seven primary attributes are strength, intelligence, wisdom, dexterity, charisma, constitution, and perception.

Characters in D&D are also described as having a particular occupation, such as wizard, fighter, ranger, swordsman, cavalier, paladin, war mage, healer, cleric, etc. In short, everything one might use to describe a person would be attributed to a character. Personality traits, life force, life energy, alignment, social class, health problems, etiquette, comeliness, mannerisms, wealth, power, level of experience, language and dialect, material possessions, powers or unique abilities, personal history – you name it.

To many, D&D is a boring game because it is highly technical, requires reviewing charts for practically everything, rolling many different types of dice based on statistical outcomes and scores, and many other calculations. In short, ninety nine percent of the game is in the mind, despite the many elaborate props for the game, such as a grid board, detailed led figurines, landscape pieces, pictures, etc.

The game I played in was unique – and had even more complexity and detail than the average game. The “Dungeon Master” – the individual who basically guides game scenarios and acts on behalf of all aspects of the fictitious world – to include weather, towns/cities inhabitants, all encounters, and innumerable other details – is the one who brings the game to life. Our dungeon master inherited a third generation game (to include charts, maps, an entire library of books, characters – everything – compiled over 20 years of playing – passed down through three dungeon masters). The game we played was a more highly developed world with detailed geography, and history concerning everyone, and everything in it, than could ever be purchased in any store. Over time, we added to the rich heritage of this unique game, providing our characters to its evolution.

A game as complex as ours enabled innumerable possibilities. We weren't limited; if we wanted to travel west for five days – our dungeon master was prepared and knew exactly what we would encounter. It was for this reason that our imaginations were tirelessly intrigued. We began with fighting dinosaurs to help an aged farmer defend his livestock, and eventually ended up with characters that were so powerful, they were traveling to other dimensions, battling demons, and even rescuing entire nations against the forces of evil.

Our group would play for hours on end, sometimes going on marathon weekends and playing for three and even four days without ceasing. Our only breaks would be eating, and going to bathroom. Our imaginations were so on fire, we simply didn't get tired. Playing D&D was like reading a dynamic book, of which we were a part, and had

influence in the outcome. In fact, if one of us were to keep a journal of our quests and adventures, several volumes of entertaining literature would've been produced.

All of us had at least one character, by which we were very familiar with. At any given moment in the game, we could explain in practically infinite detail our character's situation.

Most people play D&D to battle monsters and collect treasure; our game was nothing like this. The object of our game was exactly how well we could maintain character consistency. For instance, I ran a character that was a passive human female classified as a healer. She was exceptionally beautiful, lawful good in alignment, and would willingly lay down her life even for an enemy. Character personality is a combination of alignment, race, class, and all other aspects of the character; if I strayed from her established personality, I was penalized by the dungeon master. All the mistakes I would make concerning my character's consistency would result in experience points being taken away, thus, my character's growth would be exceptionally slow.

For instance, it may take years to build up a character to the point that the character is powerful enough to make a difference. Sacrificing the life of such a character in a game isn't just losing the game. It's losing a character that might have taken years to establish. My female healer took three years to firmly establish, yet at any given moment, if she acted selfishly, or cowardly, trying to preserve her own life – then I wasn't playing the game right. It's probably for this reason that I remember this character so well; it was very difficult to play her right, and keep her alive.

There is no winning or losing in D&D, but when lives (*in the game*) were saved, then we felt great. Then again, sometimes lives were saved at the cost of sacrificing an 8<sup>th</sup> level druid, which brought the player of that character to tears. Losing a powerfully established character was terrible, and we would sometimes mourn their loss and talk about all their good deeds when they were alive. Losing a character was like losing a good friend.

The reason I've elaborated on my D&D days is because this game has gained a reputation as possessing cult-like attributes. We used to mock people that would make fun of us, because we thought those that viewed us as nerdy D&D geeks simply didn't have the intelligence to play the game, and therefore provided primitive criticism in response to something they couldn't understand. While our assessment of their critical behavior toward us might have contained an element of truth, the game does possess cult-like attributes, I have now come to believe.

The game itself is usually harmless, (*for most intents and purposes*), so long as the players keep in mind that it IS just a game. And one should keep in mind that since the game is a creation of the mind, it's amendable, and anything undesirable can simply be omitted. This can be somewhat difficult though, in some situations. I found it increasingly difficult to adjust it according to my beliefs, and eventually quit, because I was imposing my own belief system upon others.

### 2.3.1 Religion in D&D:

As a Christian, the one thing that bothered me the most about D&D is that the aspect of religion is so deeply ingrained within it. Certain questions eventually bothered me to the point that I quit running it – as previously mentioned. (After the Army, I



inherited this game, and became its fourth generation dungeon master). I simply couldn't find a way of molding the game to fit my own, and my player's wishes.

For instance, the book "Deities & Demigods", written by Gary Gygaxx, was a product of intense study in different religions and myths all around the world. This book is used in the game to aid in possible encounters with *gods*, (*which for my game, because of my Christian heritage, I called them either angels or fallen angels*). While this book contains Greek, Aztec, Myan, Chinese, and innumerable other mythical beings from cultures all around the world, Jesus isn't included. Even if He was, His power would've been debatable, if any description other than "Unlimited" were given.

By writing "Deities & Demigods", it's my opinion that Gary Gygaxx wasn't intending to open up a can of worms; he simply wanted to produce a guidebook containing mythical beings, and define their powers, attributes, descriptions, etc. He probably figured that Christians would give him some grief if he included Jesus in this book, and therefore excluded Him. Certainly he was right – because D&D has received considerable bad publicity by the Christian community as it is!

The fact that Jesus wasn't listed bothered me, as well as the previous dungeon masters that contributed to this game. Christian players wanted Christian characters, so one of the previous dungeon masters created something called the "New Faith". In the terms of the game, the New Faith was a religion founded upon fragments of the Holy Bible that were uncovered – (our game was supposedly in earth's distant future, after WWIII, and the advent of dragons coming to earth from other worlds).

In *my* game, there were several instances where players were telling me that their Christian characters were praying to God – the living God – for help. Here, I was stuck in a bad situation. I can't be God! If I said "Ok, the demon left," but didn't give a similar response for someone praying to say, Odin, or Zeus, then I would be projecting my own religious beliefs upon the players – not all of which were Christians. Therefore, my only option was to roll dice – and base the outcomes on the dice – just like everything else in the game. BUT IT BOTHERED ME when the dice rolled up a level-four demon that brutally murdered a number of helpless, praying, devout Christian characters, then escaped unscathed – delving back into the pit of hell.

While some Christians might be able to separate *game* from *reality*, in this situation, I couldn't. Even the idea of a demon being allowed to brutally slay a true Christian didn't set well in my stomach – despite the fact that it was a game. Situations like this kept me awake at night, and I eventually quit running the game, and sold it to one of the players.

I thought of getting rid of the religion aspect of this game all together – but this would've resulted in watering the game down, decreasing its realism. Players would've complained, because some of the greatest quests were those that valiant characters did in honor of God. Perhaps if I took the time, I could eventually come up with a solution to make the game more palatable, but it was easier to just give it up.

### 2.3.2 Character alignments:

While I wouldn't allow evil characters in my game, most dungeon masters allow players to generate and run evil characters. This allows people to explore the dark regions of their minds in depth. Most games where players are running evil characters

aren't very realistic, because these games would be composed of a party of evil criminals – all working together in harmony. Evil characters developing loving, sacrificial relationships, is simply not realistic.

When I played D&D in the Army, evil characters were allowed because another dungeon master was calling the shots. A few people in our group tried running them. This proved to be no fun though, because the dungeon master enforced character consistency, so evil characters seldom got along, and usually ended up betraying and murdering each other. Evil characters also generate more enemies than any other character alignment – and since our game wasn't modular, but rather a compiled historical record of events, these enemies would culminate, and seek revenge.

The only way to get ahead as an evil character in our game was to be exceptionally deceptive, cunning, and most of all – lucky. The reward of playing an evil character correctly wasn't honor and prestige earned through valiant actions in defense of righteousness, but rather, power and affluence through back stabbing. Because of the degree of difficulty in playing evil characters, the high level of luck, and the fact that even the greatest reward wasn't worth all that much, those that tried playing evil characters didn't continue to do so for very long.

I must say it again, the game I played in was very unique, because the true nature of evil was evident. This is uncommon in D&D though, because most D&D games don't have a culminating history, nor is character consistency enforced. Because of this, players in most D&D games can often play groups of evil characters working together, get ahead more quickly, and have no fear of retribution. This allows players the opportunity to enjoy plotting evil, and seeing their plots through, which I think is a very unhealthy activity, spiritually speaking – even if it is a game.

While neutral-good (the average citizen) characters were the easiest to run in our game, because they have a lot of lee-way, lawful good were always the best, because they are always expected to save each other when times got rough. Groups are always stronger than individuals, and lawful good groups work together better than any other kind. Groups where some of the characters were neutral, or evil, were usually so riddled with internal turmoil, they couldn't accomplish anything productive, because they were always so busy fighting each other!

### 2.3.3 A game of the mind:

Dungeons & Dragons is a game that provokes powerful mental images; the line diving imagination and reality grows thin on the third day of a D&D marathon. All of the characters in our game were known in depth by all of us. We all also drew many pictures of our characters, aiding in our visual imagery. Often even when we weren't playing, we would sit and talk about our characters, and what we were going to do in the next game.

I frequently dreamed about my characters, and I wasn't the only one. One member of our group even had a waking hallucination. One day while waking in the woods in South Korea where we were stationed, he said he was engulfed in a whirlwind, and suddenly he was transformed into another person, in another time, in another place. He thought he was transformed into a ranger wearing studded leather, wielding a bow, and trekking his way through a forest on a mission. The episode took him away, then he snapped out of it, finding himself staring at a tree, wondering what happened. He said he

thought he looked at his watch before the incident, and thought he might have been in a trance for over a half-hour.

One odd thing about his hallucination was that he didn't even have any characters that resembled what he thought he was. He figured that if he were going to fanaticize about becoming something, it surely would've been his favorite character, a 12<sup>th</sup> level druid named Mordechai.

#### 2.3.4 Dungeons & Dragons thought-forms:

When I analyze what is entailed in D&D, literally hours of intense, mental concentration is devoted to fictional characters. It's certainly a possibility that if this type of concentration is prolonged enough, a phenomenon such as occurred in the Philip experiment might be produced unintentionally.

Considering all of the elements D&D is composed of, this might be highly detrimental. What if, for instance, the game involves a host of powerful, evil characters, of which the players are emotionally bonded with. The thought-forms that would culminate over time, given enough energy, might very well produce individuality, and wreak havoc. Furthermore, if these thought-forms attract demonic entities, then such a game could literally be engulfed with demonic activity.

If people with psychological problems such as mild schizophrenia, suicidal tendencies, or even disturbing behavior that could develop into psychopathic proportions – are to play D&D for an extended period of time, they are cut loose to expound upon their darkest imaginations. Their own problems, combined with the thought-forms that might be influencing them, as well as possible demonic entities, presents to me a very bad situation.

#### 2.4 Could thought-forms be ghosts?

Could it be a possibility that some ghosts aren't disincarnate spirits at all; instead, they are thought-forms? Perhaps when people generate thought-forms while alive, some may be powerful enough to both continue their existence beyond their originator's physical life, and also assume visible forms.

For instance, if a person is brutally killed, (whether by accident or murder), the thought-forms generated during such an event might be charged with an exceptional amount of energy – because of the amount of emotion people experience at the time of death. (*Strong emotion = powerful thoughts*). I think this is the most common type of thought-form, because of the many documented haunting cases that usually indicate an untimely or tragic death. During the last moments alive, powerful thought-forms are released, and generate what is known as a haunting.

But while most hauntings speak of untimely, tragic death, some don't. In many haunting cases, what is perceived as a disincarnate spirit may actually be a thought-form still attempting to fulfill its mission, which may take many forms. A mother looks for her lost child, a boy searches for his father, a grandfather reveals the true heir his estate, etc.; these are all examples of hauntings. Thought-form hauntings don't have to be tragic either. Hearing ghostly piano music might be a thought-form generated from someone that enjoyed playing so immensely, that a thought-form was left behind that is powerful

enough to be heard if the conditions are right.

In short, a great deal of ghostly phenomenon may simply be shadowy reflections of the strongest thoughts and desires that certain people had when they were still alive, either during their lives, or in their last moments before death.

## 2.5 The Thought-form / Piggy-back Theory:

One way to explain ghosts is that if a person has a lot of *life force* in him/her at the point of death, then that surplus energy aids him/her in defying *the grave* in the form of an apparition. While among parapsychologists this is a general explanation for how ghosts come about, I will submit yet another theory.

In the previous chapter, I discussed a great deal of information that supports the possibility that ghosts exist. One thing I mentioned about ghosts is that *somehow* they are able to come up out of the grave, and onto the surface of the earth, and have enough energy to be seen by people. How might this be achieved? I've already mentioned that some ghostly phenomenon might be strictly thought-forms, but now I will suggest another possibility. Perhaps after death, disincarnate entities are somehow reunited with the thought-forms they generated when alive.

In a manner of speaking, a disincarnate spirit might be able to *piggy-back* on powerful thought-forms, feeding off their energy. I don't think this possibility should be overlooked, considering the fact that in the previously researched information I've mentioned about thought-forms, it appears that thought-forms can be manipulated, and even possessed by disincarnate entities. While information about the existence of ghosts has already been discussed – the method in which disincarnate entities employ in order to escape the confines of the grave – can be explained by the piggy-back / thought-form theory.

While thought-forms can probably be captured and fed upon by all disincarnate entities, it's my assumption that the originator of a thought-form has a better chance at capturing his/her own created thought-forms, because the originator's energy would be in sync with his/her own thought-forms.

Concerning the theories I've suggested that link thought-forms with ghosts – I have absolutely no scriptural support. In light of this, I hope I'm not condemned as a heretic for simply pondering some possibilities. I've only come to the conclusion that thought-forms and ghosts might both exist, (using – *and hopefully not twisting* – scripture to come to this conclusion), and because these entities might exist, I'm simply expounding on their attributes, and suggesting some possibilities. *I enjoy expounding on theories – please humor me.*

## References

- 1 Hugo de Garis, *Cosmism*, <http://psoup.math.wisc.edu/extras/deGaris/cosmism.html>, 1996.
- 2 Ibid. (1)
- 3 Martyn Amos, *DNA Computation*, <http://www.csc.liv.ac.uk/~ctag/archive/th/amos-thesis.ab.html>
- 4 Tsuguejika Kaminuma and Gen Matsumoto, eds., *Biocomputers: the Next Generation from Japan*, (trans. Norman Cook).
- 5 Ibid. (1)
- 6 Article in Fresno Bee taken from John Markoff, New York Times, *Warp-Speed computers on horizon*, July 16, 1999.
- 7 Rosemary Ellen Guiley, *Harper's Encyclopedia of Mystical & Paranormal Experience*, HarperSanFrancisco, San Francisco, 1991, pages 616-617.
- 8 Ibid. (7) Pages 616-617
- 9 Ibid. (7) Pages 616-617
- 10 Ibid. (7) Page 57.
- 11 Ibid. (7) Page 57.
- 12 Ibid. (7) Page 57.
- 13 Ibid. (7) Pages 343-344.
- 14 Collin Wilson & Dr. Christopher Evans, *The Book of Great Mysteries*, Dorset Press, New York, 1990, pages 70-74.
- 15 Ibid. (7) Pages 616-617.
- 16 Ibid. (7) Pages 443-444.

# PART III

## *REALMS OF EXISTENCE*

---

Concerning the existence of aliens, there should now be somewhat of an understanding just exactly what entities mentioned in the Bible can be classified as aliens. Now a second question remains. Don't aliens live in outer space, and angels, among some of the other entities mentioned in the Bible, have heaven as their dwelling place? Exactly what does the Bible mean when it mentions the terms "Heaven", "Heaven of Heavens", "3<sup>rd</sup> Heaven", "Paradise", etc.?

## CHAPTER 9: THE HEAVENLY REALMS

### 1. Understanding heaven:

#### 1.1 Forward:

In several places in this book up to this point, I've indicated that for more detailed information concerning the realms of heaven, to consult this chapter. I've segmented this detailed information into its own chapter, because explaining exactly what/where heaven is has proven to be an extensive project – deserving of it's own chapter.

Many of the conclusions I've discussed so far concerning the definitions of particular entities depend on an in depth understanding of the realms of heaven. This chapter should serve the purpose of establishing the detailed information necessary to fully support many of my previous statements including information that wasn't fully explained.

#### 1.2 The three realms of heaven:

Heaven consists of 3 parts: 1<sup>st</sup> heaven, 2<sup>nd</sup> heaven, and 3<sup>rd</sup> heaven. (*No, I'm not a Mormon.*) The 3<sup>rd</sup> heaven is specifically mentioned by Paul in 2 Corinthians 12:2. Logic alone dictates that if there is a 3<sup>rd</sup> heaven, then there must also be 1<sup>st</sup>, and 2<sup>nd</sup> heavens too. Without taking the dimensional/alternate planes aspect into consideration, 1<sup>st</sup> heaven is the sky above the earth, and 2<sup>nd</sup> heaven is outer space.

Simply looking this term up in a concordance provides the three definitions of sky, outer space, and another invisible dimension where God dwells. Following is one of the Greek terms for heaven, extracted from Strong's exhaustive concordance:

#### **shamayim { shaw-mah'-yim} dual of an unused singular shameh { shaw-meh'}**

from an unused root meaning to be lofty; TWOT – 2407a; n m

AV – heaven 398, air 21, astrologers + 1895 1; 420

GK – 9028 {!yIm'v;}

1) heaven, heavens, sky

1a) visible heavens, sky

1a1) as abode of the stars

1a2) as the visible universe, the sky, atmosphere, etc

1b) Heaven (as the abode of God)<sup>1</sup>

Heaven, in general, is a term used to describe *places*, or *states of glory*, primarily inaccessible to man, (*at least until this century – concerning recent technological advancements reaching into the sky, and the stars*). These inaccessible places, or states of glory, are both higher, and more glorious than earth. Following will be an explanation of both of these aspects of heaven.

#### 1.3. The heavens are places:

When speaking of heaven as a place, the expanse around the earth, which is the sky and outer space, is mentioned as being heaven in several passages of scripture. One such reference, Luke 3:21-22, can be construed as both the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> heavens, because this is where it is stated that the Holy Spirit descended from *heaven*, which in this case was the dimension of heaven (3<sup>rd</sup> heaven) opening up into the sky (1<sup>st</sup> heaven). Other references to heaven being the expanse around the earth are found in Genesis 1:15-18, and Exodus 32:13.

#### Luke 3:21-22

<sup>21</sup>Now when all the people were baptized, it came to pass, that Jesus also being baptized, and praying, the heaven was opened, <sup>22</sup>And the Holy Ghost descended in a bodily shape like a dove upon him, and a voice came from heaven, which said, Thou art my beloved Son; in thee I am well pleased.

#### Genesis 1:15-18

<sup>15</sup>And let them be for lights in the firmament of the heaven to give light upon the earth: and it was so. <sup>16</sup>And God made two great lights; the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night: he made the stars also. <sup>17</sup>And God set them in the firmament of the heaven to give light upon the earth, <sup>18</sup>And to rule over the day and over the night, and to divide the light from the darkness: and God saw that it was good.

#### Exodus 32:13

<sup>13</sup>Remember Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, thy servants, to whom thou swarest by thine own self, and saidst unto them, I will multiply your seed as the stars of heaven, and all this land that I have spoken of will I give unto your seed, and they shall inherit it for ever.

As for the 3<sup>rd</sup> heaven I previously mentioned, it is mentioned by the apostle Paul in 2 Corinthians 12:2, who was referring to the apostle John's trip to the 3<sup>rd</sup> heaven, which is described in Revelation 1:9-11.

#### 2 Corinthians 12:2

<sup>2</sup>I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, (whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) such an one caught up to the 3<sup>rd</sup> heaven. <sup>3</sup>And I knew such a man, (whether in the body, or out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) <sup>4</sup>How that he was caught up into paradise, and heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful for a man to utter.

#### Revelation 1:9-11

<sup>9</sup>I John, who also am your brother, and companion in tribulation, and in the kingdom and patience of Jesus Christ, was in the isle that is called Patmos, for the word of God, and for the testimony of Jesus Christ. <sup>10</sup>I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day, and heard behind me a great voice, as of a trumpet, <sup>11</sup>Saying, I am Alpha and Omega, the first and the last: and, What thou seest, write in a book, and send it unto the seven churches which are in Asia; unto Ephesus, and unto Smyrna, and unto Pergamos, and unto Thyatira, and unto Sardis, and unto Philadelphia, and unto Laodicea.

The 3<sup>rd</sup> heaven isn't described as being either the sky, or outer space, but rather a place that rests in the very presence of God and many of His holy angels. Unlike the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> heavens, the 3<sup>rd</sup> heaven is not visible with physical eyes. Genesis 28:12-13, Psalms 11:4, and Matthew 6:9 are more examples of the 3<sup>rd</sup> heaven, also referred to as the heaven of heavens.

#### Genesis 28:12-13

<sup>12</sup>And he dreamed, and behold a ladder set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to heaven: and behold the angels of God ascending and descending on it. <sup>13</sup>And, behold, the LORD stood above it, and said, I am the LORD God of Abraham thy father, and the God of Isaac: the land whereon thou liest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed;



Psalms 11:4

*<sup>4</sup>The LORD is in his holy temple, the LORD'S throne is in heaven: his eyes behold, his eyelids try, the children of men.*

Matthew 6:9

*<sup>9</sup>After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be thy name.  
<sup>10</sup>Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done in earth, as it is in heaven.*

In some scriptures, the term *paradise* could be construed as heaven, but as you will see in the following chapter, *paradise* preceding the crucifixion of Christ is different than *paradise* after the crucifixion. The pre-crucifixion *paradise* is mentioned in Luke 23:39-43, and isn't any of the 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup>, or 3<sup>rd</sup> heavens; when it existed, it was in Hades. Aside from other information in the next chapter, the fact that this *paradise* wasn't the 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup>, or 3<sup>rd</sup> heavens can be affirmed by the fact that Jesus went to a place called *paradise* after He was crucified – which wasn't the visible expanse around the earth. It wasn't the abode of God the Father, either, because after He was crucified, Jesus informed Mary in John 20:17 that He had not yet been to the Father.

Luke 23:39-43

*<sup>39</sup>And one of the malefactors which were hanged railed on him, saying, If thou be Christ, save thyself and us. <sup>40</sup>But the other answering rebuked him, saying, Dost not thou fear God, seeing thou art in the same condemnation? <sup>41</sup>And we indeed justly; for we receive the due reward of our deeds: but this man hath done nothing amiss. <sup>42</sup>And he said unto Jesus, Lord, remember me when thou comest into thy kingdom. <sup>43</sup>And Jesus said unto him, Verily I say unto thee, To day shalt thou be with me in paradise.*

John 20:17

*<sup>17</sup>Jesus saith unto her, Touch me not; for I am not yet ascended to my Father: but go to my brethren, and say unto them, I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and to my God, and your God.*

The next chapter will provide more information about *paradise*; the primary focus of this chapter is to elaborate upon the 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup>, and 3<sup>rd</sup> heavens.

#### 1.4 Heaven as a state of glory:

Speaking of heaven as a state of glory, The Kingdom of God is mentioned in many places in the Bible as being a level of glory. Instances of this are found in certain key phrases:

1. Christians are in the world, not of it. (John 15:19)
2. The Kingdom of God is at hand. (Mark 1:15)
3. The body, (though physically cursed to death), is the temple of the Holy Spirit. (1 Corinthians 6:19)

The fact that Christians are saved, yet stuck in a cursed world in bodies cursed to die speaks of a certain level of glory. All people will physically die, (*with the exception of the rapture*), yet, faithful Christians will be saved. Therefore, humanity is not currently at the highest level of glory, because human spirits are still dwelling in cursed bodies. But when Christians die, they will be in the presence of God. Furthermore, after the rapture, they will physically be in the presence of God.

#### 1.4.1 Humanities journey through levels of glory:

In short, the entire human race over its entire existence has been going through different levels of glory. All levels other than the highest level are intermediary levels of glory which will all pass away on Judgment Day, leaving only the saved to spend eternity with God, and the deceived to eternally perish in the *lake of fire*.

Before the fall, there was no sickness or death. Adam and Eve lived in God's presence. After the fall, mankind was under the curse of death. Then, after the great flood of Noah, the life span of mankind dramatically decreased. The level of glory for man was decreased to the point that simply being in God's presence would be fatal. (*Recall that touching the ark of the covenant brought physical death, and also that this ark was kept in an inner chamber, where only the high priest could enter on one day out of every year (Hebrews 9:1-16).*)

These were all different levels of glory, descending from a higher state to a lower state, manifested in the increasing decrepit state at which the human physical body was deteriorating, as well as mankind's relationship with God.

Once Christ was crucified, this broke the spiritual curse upon mankind, (for the curse of death was both a physical, and a spiritual curse). Being in the presence of God, (whose presence rested over the Ark of the Covenant in the Holy of Holies), was no longer a fatal experience after the death and resurrection of Christ. This was signified by the ripping of the veil that separated the Holy of Holies from the rest of the temple (Matthew 27:51, Mark 15:37, Luke 23:44).

The spiritual level of glory for mankind has finally taken a turn – mankind is now on the rise in glory toward God, through Christ. The rapture will be the dramatic physical manifestation of the restoring of mankind's return to a glorified state, to physically be in God's presence once again.

(Note: some argue that since the word "Rapture" isn't mentioned in the Bible, then it's not going to happen. This argument is based on an incorrect assumption. While the exact term *Rapture* isn't used in the King James version, the terms "*Taken*", and "*Caught up*" are. "*Taken*" is used in Luke 17:34-36, and Matthew 24:40-41, and "*Caught up*" is used in 2 Corinthians 12:2-4, 1 Thessalonians 4:17, and Revelation 12:5. In these passages of scripture, this Greek word – *paralambano*, { *paralambavnw* } – was translated into English as "*taken*", and – *harpazo*, { *aJrpavzw* } – as "*caught up*", but before Greek was translated into English, it passed through Latin.<sup>1,2</sup> In English, the word *Rapture* could easily have been used, because the Latin translation of the Bible uses *Rapere*, from where English derives the word *Rapture*.<sup>3</sup> And aside from the argument of the use of a word, simply looking at these scriptures clearly describes the concept of the rapture; an activity associated with God snatching people up off the earth, and a time in the future when Christians will be snatched up out of the world.)

#### Luke 17:34-36

<sup>34</sup>I tell you, in that night there shall be two men in one bed; the one shall be taken, and the other shall be left. <sup>35</sup>Two women shall be grinding together; the one shall be taken, and the other left. <sup>36</sup>Two men shall be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left.

#### Matthew 24:40-41

<sup>40</sup>Then shall two be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left. <sup>41</sup>Two women shall be grinding at the mill; the one shall be taken, and the other left.

## 2 Corinthians 12:2-4

*<sup>2</sup>I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, (whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) such an one caught up to the 3<sup>rd</sup> heaven. <sup>3</sup>And I knew such a man, (whether in the body, or out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) <sup>4</sup>How that he was caught up into paradise, and heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful for a man to utter.*

## 1 Thessalonians 4:17

*<sup>17</sup>Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.*

## Revelation 12:5

*<sup>5</sup>And she brought forth a man child, who was to rule all nations with a rod of iron: and her child was caught up unto God, and to his throne.*

Many Christians argue about the rapture, emphatically insisting that this is, or is not, a future occurrence that will happen to the Christian church. They also argue over when it will occur, in relation to the end-times tribulation; hence the terms pre-trib, mid-trib, and post-trib. All these arguments have scripture to support their views – and some of the most distinguished theologians I know of – are on different sides of this particular coin. While I believe that the rapture is an event in the future – primarily because of the above quoted scriptures, and I lean in favor of a pre-trib rapture, *because of other scriptures I won't bother to mention* here, I won't argue with anyone about it. Doing so is essentially a waste of time. If a Christian is truly a Christian, then that person has nothing to worry about – in any scenario. We'll all find out soon enough, if and when the rapture will occur.

### 1.4.2 The earth's journey through levels of glory:

The earth, too, is in a certain level of glory. The Garden of Eden was in a higher level of glory before the fall. Once Adam and Eve sinned, the entire earth was taken from this higher level of glory, (probably connected with the 2<sup>nd</sup> heaven in a more intimate way than it currently is – i.e., in open contact with other worlds). The fulfillment of this decreased level of glory wasn't evident until the flood of Noah, when the Garden of Eden was destroyed.

Spiritually speaking, the earth lost the constant presence of God upon its soil. Instead, the soil of the earth was cursed by the blood of Abel, who was murdered by his own brother in Genesis 4:10-12.

After the flood, the earth's environment became harsh. Desserts of ice, and sand formed upon the globe; masses of bitter water (oceans and seas) broke up the land, and divided it into separate continents. Fresh water was no longer an ever-present friend, flowing throughout the earth in a network of underground rivers the way it was before, as described in Genesis 2:5-6. Instead, it now comes from the sky when God determines it to do so. In this manner, God has allowed floods, and droughts, which didn't exist beforehand.

Lions no longer lay next to lambs. Instead, carnivores developed, and food became a limited resource. Venom, claws, and sharp teeth replaced the once peaceful balance that rested between all living creatures.

The above information concerning carnivores is refuted by evolutionists, because of the evidence found in the fossil record that suggests these meat-eating creatures precede man's existence. But there is an explanation that describes the existence of all of

the vicious creatures of earth's past – incorrectly thought to precede man. The fossils of carnivores thought to be millions of years old aren't as old as carbon dating purports them to be – *technically speaking*. Most likely when the flood of Noah covered the earth, and earth decreased in its level of glory, its time continuum may have been altered. This alteration might be held responsible for the date discrepancies found with carbon dating fossils. I find this theory – (I'll call it my glory / time-continuum theory) – a plausible theory, because in my opinion, it makes sense that earth's time continuum was altered. It could be said that the faster one approaches the speed of light, the closer one approaches the kingdom of God, because God is light (1 John 1:5). Decreasing in levels of glory, therefore, may very well entail an alteration of the time continuum in which that thing that is decreasing in glory exists. If the earth went through such a decrease in its time continuum, it may be perceived as being much older than it really is. (If there are any quantum physicists out there that would be intrigued to take this one on, I'd love to hear about it!)

Evolution is completely incompatible with scripture. Some try to marry the Bible with evolution by stating that God created man *using* evolution as His method, but scripture emphatically rebukes this idea. Reading Genesis chapter 2, it's clear that God created Adam by molding him from the clay of the earth – then breathing life into him, not by mutating other creations. Scripture also states that Eve came from Adam's rib. This would not be the case had humans *evolved* from other species.

#### Genesis 2:7-22

<sup>7</sup>And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul. ... <sup>18</sup>And the LORD God said, It is not good that the man should be alone; I will make him an help meet for him. <sup>19</sup>And out of the ground the LORD God formed every beast of the field, and every fowl of the air; and brought them unto Adam to see what he would call them: and whatsoever Adam called every living creature, that was the name thereof. <sup>20</sup>And Adam gave names to all cattle, and to the fowl of the air, and to every beast of the field; but for Adam there was not found an help meet for him. <sup>21</sup>And the LORD God caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam, and he slept: and he took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh instead thereof; <sup>22</sup>And the rib, which the LORD God had taken from man, made he a woman, and brought her unto the man..

Furthermore, if dinosaurs preceded man by any great length of time – and if other *carnivores* preceded man, then how could it be that there was no death in the world? According to the Bible, carnivores could not have existed before Adam and Eve because death entered the world through sin – and therefore dinosaur fossils can't possibly be as old as carbon dating purports.

(For a more in depth study on Creationism verses the theory of evolution, I personally recommend the works of Dr. D. James Kennedy. While I have never heard him purport my *glory / time-continuum* explanation for carbon dating discrepancies with the fossil record, he has a vast amount of refutable evidence to discredit the theory of evolution, and support Creationism.)

I also have another theory concerning the origin of vicious dinosaurs, which you will have to read about in the chapter I have dedicated to evolution. In short, I think many of them were unnatural aberrations created by fallen angels. Most creationists believe that dinosaurs were saved from the flood, and died out due to a lack of resources following the flood, or because the atmospheric density was so drastically altered, but I personally think God's a better ecologist than that. It makes more sense to me that He

intentionally made the majority of them extinct.

Currently, while you are reading this book, the earth is still going through changes. Earth quakes, tornadoes and floods, hurricanes, climate changes, and erupting volcanoes are on the rise.<sup>4</sup> These all signify the birth pangs of the next fall in glory. Once the rapture occurs, then the restraining power of the Holy Spirit will be removed from this world, and leave it spiritually bare for Satan to enter and destroy. The antichrist will come as a courting groom, only to leave his bride to the hands of destruction.

Then finally, the Lord of Lords, and King of Kings will come in all His glory, and destroy the antichrist, and set up His kingdom. The earth will finally be rising in glory once again. But the rise to the highest level of glory won't be complete for the earth until after Satan is released one last time, and destroyed in the lake of fire once and for all. Then, as it is written, a new heaven and new earth will replace all that currently exists.<sup>5</sup> Hell will be removed from the center of the earth, and cast into another place all together, called the *lake of fire*. In essence, the heart of the earth will be cleansed for all eternity.

### 1.5 Conclusion about the realms of heaven:

Seeing that heaven is both a state of glory, as well as a collection of vast realms, it can be concluded that at least the 2<sup>nd</sup> heaven is possibly more comprehensible in this modern age than ever before. I can imagine innumerable stars within the cosmos, all filled with various life forms – many glorified as earth once was. Others may be similar to the way earth is now, and some even boarder-lining hell as earth will soon be.

Traveling through space, we might be able to encounter some of the entities found in the 2<sup>nd</sup> heaven. While I think it's God's plan to limit this activity for fallen races – (which I've discussed various reasons why in other chapters) – His barriers are purposely breakable. They're only meant to slow us all down, so that we will be able to cross when the time is right. It's my opinion that during the millennial reign, earth will be an active part of the 2<sup>nd</sup> heaven once again, (as I believe it was once before), gaining access to all of the other glorified worlds in the cosmos. *(It may even become a part of the 2<sup>nd</sup> heaven before then – under the rule of the antichrist. But during this time, the other worlds in contact with earth won't be glorified – they will be fallen just as earth is.)*

Thinking about these innumerable other realms fascinates me, and I often look forward to the day when I can be a traveler – curiously seeking out the vastness of all that God has created, with His eternal spirit dwelling within me, sharing in my endless sense of wonder.

### 2. The old heaven and earth – Satan's ancient kingdom:

While digging in my research about the Sons of God being angels, I found something quite startling on some of the links posted on a web site called the Watcher's web site.<sup>6,7</sup> This web site that has helped me exceedingly in my research. It concerns biblical information supporting the possibility that earth was once a habitation of angelic beings – prior to Adam and Eve's creation. Furthermore, it provided a host of scientific information supporting the possibility that our solar system was once a vastly different solar system than it is now; a solar system with earth's neighboring planets containing life. While I refute the first of these two theories – that an angelic civilization might have

existed on earth pre-dating Adam and Eve, I do agree with the later theory. This section of this chapter derives its information researched from the links from this particular web site, and verified with my own references to the Bible, Strong's exhaustive concordance, and more Internet sources I found on my own.

## 2.1 What does science have to tell us?

There are four items of scientific interest that have developed in recent years concerning evidence of life in outer space. These include the discovery of organic compounds found on asteroids, what appears to be fossilized micro-organisms found on a meteorite from Mars, the well famed face and pyramids also found on Mars, and what scientists have found concerning the fate of Mars.

### 2.1.1 Organic compounds found on asteroids:

Following is an excerpt taken directly from the previously mentioned source on the Internet:

*"In the 1987 October edition of Science magazine, D.P. Cruikshank and R.H. Brown reported a startling piece of news. They had discovered organic compounds on three asteroids: Murray, 103 Electra and Orgueil. Utilizing the process of spectral analyses of reflected light from these three asteroids, Cruikshank and Brown detected amino acids. More startlingly, "aqueous alteration products" such as clay were found, suggesting that the parent body had been affected by water. If these asteroids did in fact contain sediment, it could not have deposited without large quantities of water. But these were asteroids – relatively minute chunks of rock hurtling around the sun from a common area between the orbit of Mars and Jupiter. The evidence found on these asteroids could only mean that they were from a parenting body possessing an atmosphere and oceans. This parent planetary body was broken up in a cataclysm long ago that shouldn't be a mystery if one is familiar with the Bible."*<sup>8</sup>

### 2.1.2. Micro-organisms are found on meteorites from Mars:

Following is an excerpt from a NASA government web site:

*"In August 1996, a group of scientists announced that they had found evidence of ancient life on Mars. This evidence included bacteria-shaped objects and organic chemical molecules in the Martian meteorite ALH 84001, which was collected in Antarctica. In the next few days, NASA presented the work at a press conference, the President made a statement about it, and the TV and papers were full of reports, speculation, and jokes about life on Mars."*<sup>9</sup>

### 2.1.3. The face, and pyramids found on Mars:

Almost everyone has heard about the face, and the pyramids that have been photographed on Mars. The photos are compelling,<sup>10</sup> and the media is running wild with

this information, even more so than the micro-organisms discovered in the previously mentioned meteorite from Mars. The fairly recent movie starring Arnold Schwarzenegger, titled *Total Recall*, is a fictionalized account depicting the possibility that these pyramid monuments nestled around the face were designed to resurrect this dead planet back to life.

While it's doubtful that the pyramids on Mars contain any capability of resurrecting this dead planet – they certainly do stand as a testament to a prior civilization; a world that once might have been.

#### 2.1.4 The Martian cataclysm:

Again, because the source for most of this information I'm discussing that I found on the Internet is worded so well, I'll simply quote its contents:

*“Satellites sent to Mars in 1976 collected information concerning the geological nature of Mars, and it's atmosphere. The images from the orbiters mapping sequence made it clear that Mars had experienced a nearly unimaginable catastrophic episode.*

*With the evidence of oceans of water having once flowed on Mars' surface in huge quantities, it was apparent that the Martian atmosphere was once more dense, and the climate much more hospitable. Sometime in the remote past, for reasons still being debated by astrophysicists, there was a cataclysm on Mars. The Martian oceans washed over the surface of the planet, inundating their continents. The vast atmosphere was ripped away, and the once earth-like environment was laid waste.”<sup>11</sup>*

#### 2.1.5 The Exploded Planet Hypothesis:

What do organic compounds found on asteroids, micro-organisms found on Martian meteorites, the pyramids and face on Mars, and an apparent catastrophe that occurred on Mars, all point to? All these clues can be wrapped up in one package with one unique theory: the Exploded Planet Hypothesis.

According to noted astronomer Tom Van Flandern in his presentation “Exploding Planets & Non-Exploding Universes: The mechanism for explosion?”, back in the '50's, the 200-year-old Exploded Planet Hypothesis was last in vogue. A scientist by the name of Ramsey came up with a number of ways in which terrestrial-sized planets could either implode or explode with changes of state with certain elements in the core. For example, one such change of state would be the turning of water into ice. According to Ramsey, if the pressure and temperature conditions were right, they might produce a change in state in a planet's core, which could result in a spontaneous explosion or implosion.<sup>12</sup>

Evidence of such a planetary explosion, according to conspiracy theorist and author Richard Hoagland, is exactly what comprises the asteroid belt of our solar system today. The previously mentioned asteroids found to contain organic compounds – and also the unexplained catastrophe enshrouding the fate of what Mars once was, both testify to a planetary explosion that occurred long ago.

Following is an excerpt concerning the generally accepted view of how the asteroid belt was formed:

*“The accepted theory for the creation of the asteroid belt is usually the failed planet accretion theory. This theory states that during the primordial beginning of the solar system, a planet which astronomers call Astera was forming in the place now occupied by the asteroid belt. Jupiter’s gravitational influence on the incipient planet was too strong for it to fully solidify. Because of Astera’s insufficient mass early in its development, it fragmented.”<sup>13</sup>*

What Richard Hoagland points out, concerning this accepted theory for the creation of the asteroid belt, is that according to new evidence, it simply can’t be correct. As he puts it, *“The facts are becoming more obvious... both the planet Mars and this mysterious parent body of asteroids once sustained oceans and atmospheres.”<sup>14</sup>*

In short, the most likely scenario evidenced in the asteroid belt, and in Mars, is that at one time, there was a planet that formed, (or more correctly put, was created). This planetary body – *Asteria* – was an intact planet containing water – and life; not a cluster of debris that failed to accumulate into a planet. Furthermore, this planet for some mysterious reason, apparently exploded, and this explosion is what became the asteroid belt. During the explosion, Mars was buffeted, as well as earth – and / or other planets. While earth survived this cataclysm, Mars was not so fortunate.

## 2.2 What does the Bible say about the Exploding Planet Hypothesis?

Let me remind all readers – I take no credit for deriving any connection between the exploding planet hypothesis, and any passages of scripture found in the Bible pertaining to this event. Some of the passages of scripture I provide, and the way I tie my arguments together – are different than my sources, but the information that set me off to research this particular topic for myself I give full credit to the sources I mentioned at the opening of this section.

### 2.2.1 Were there worlds with civilizations before Adam and Eve were created?

When I first pondered the possibility that there could have been worlds with angelic civilizations before Adam and Eve were created, I was stumped. How could this be possible? The Watcher’s web site I researched contains many verses that supports this theory – but the way in which they are presented is slightly confusing to me. After sorting out all the pieces to this ancient puzzle, I decided Job 38:4-7 would be a good place to start.

Job 38:4-7

<sup>4</sup>Where were thou when I laid the foundations of the earth? declare, if thou hast understanding.  
<sup>5</sup>Who hath laid the measures thereof, if thou knowest? or who hath stretched the line upon it? <sup>6</sup>Whereupon are the foundations thereof fastened? or who laid the corner stone thereof; <sup>7</sup>When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?

From Job 38:4-7, I take peculiar note of verse 6, when God in His questioning Job, states that when the cornerstone of the earth was being laid, the morning stars sang together, and all the Sons of God shouted for Joy. If laying the cornerstone of the earth is referring to earth’s construction, then this is an indication that the angelic beings known



as the Sons of God existed before Adam and Eve were ever created. *(This is one of very few references that I can find that gives an indication of when angelic beings were created during creation week).*

While Job 38:4-7 seems clear enough – sort of – reflecting on Genesis chapter 1 confuses everything! This is a confusing chapter anyway – because of some of the oddities it contains – especially on the 4<sup>th</sup> day of creation. For instance, what could explain the fact that grass, herb yielding seed, and fruit trees – were created on the 3<sup>rd</sup> day of creation week, before there was even a sun – which was created on the 4<sup>th</sup> day of creation week? In fact, how could *days, evenings, and mornings* of creation be taking place at all, if there wasn't any sun until the 4<sup>th</sup> day?

These oddities have stifled me for quite some time, and I still don't claim to have a grasp on Genesis chapter 1 yet, but I have just recently – (in fact, this very evening while working on this chapter at 1:22 A.M. in the morning – I prayed and...) – found some enlightenment. This enlightenment was discovered in my trusty NIV Study Bible, which has both revealed God's poetic symbolism and symmetry to me in one bold stroke, through an understanding of two creative activities of God – forming, and filling. These activities were discovered by analyzing a key phrase found in the verses of creation week. This phrase is, "God said".

The phrase "God said" precedes every creation of God during every day of creation. While days one, two, four, and five contain this phrase only once, days three and six contain it more than once. Day three contains this phrase two times, and day six contains it three times. Because days three and six stand out like this, this denotes a turning point during creation week, dividing it into two parts; days one through three, and four through six. When lining up these days in columns so that they can represent both vertical and horizontal relationships, something amazing happens! See below, similar to how it is displayed in my NIV Study Bible:<sup>15</sup>

### ***"God Said"***

<b>Days of Forming</b>	<b>Days of Filling</b>
Day 1 "light" (v. 3)	Day 4 "lights – sun, moon, stars" (v. 16)
Day 2 "water under the expanse ... water above it" (v. 7)	Day 5 "every living and moving thing which the water teems ... every winged bird" (v. 20)
Day 3 (a.) "dry ground" (v. 9)	Day 6 (a.) "livestock, creatures that move along the ground, and wild animals" (v. 24)
Day 3 (b.) "vegetation" (v. 11)	Day 6 (b.) "man" (v. 26)
	Day 6 (c.) "every green plant for food" (v. 11)

It should be clearly evident that the horizontal relationship between these days is as follows: Day one correlates with day four, day two correlates with day five, and day three correlates with day six. Also, analyzing columns presents vertical relationships. It's in the vertical relationships where the deepest meaning can be found concerning the days of creation.

By analyzing the “God said” chart, it should become apparent that concerning the context of days one through three, compared to the context of days four through six, two themes present themselves – forming, and filling. Since science has absolutely no information regarding just exactly how *anything* can be created, (*because according to physics, matter can neither be created, nor destroyed, it only changes form*),<sup>16</sup> then these creation terms, *forming* and *filling*, are very mysterious indeed.

Taken at face value, I’d venture to say that when God was forming His creations, (days 1 through 3), He was molding a frame of some sort – for the universe (the heavens and the earth). This part of creation might also encompass any creation that may transcend the known universe, (i.e. other planes of existence). He also *formed* light – i.e., photon particles / waves – *I guess – maybe even more rudimentary than that* – and used this light as a measuring tool by which to divide increments of time.

Since at this time the universe was very different than what it is now – *earth as a planet was being formed – before there was a sun for it to orbit around* – then I would venture to say that days one through three precede any true physical creation. Instead, I think days one through three are speaking of God creating some sort of etheric field, (energy field beyond the third dimension), which would serve as a template for the material universe. The biblical term “*firmament*” might refer to this field, or template of the physical universe.

On the fourth day, God began to *fill* His *formed* creations. In a manner of speaking, days 1 through 3 involved creating a light bulb and the energy source to supply it – (*i.e. ground work preceding the big bang*); days 4 through 6 involved flipping on the switch...BOOM...and filling the universe with life!

It should also be noted that in days one through three – there are no true life forms created. Plant *life* was created, but scripture never gives any indication that plants have spirits as beings of flesh do. Plants, vegetables, and trees are mediums through which the energy of the sun, and nutrients of the earth, are converted into a usable format and supplied to beings of flesh. Even in a divine environment, (*the New Jerusalem, and the Garden of Eden*), while flesh is not eaten, straw, and fruit is. If in a divine environment scripture states that there is no death, yet fruit and straw are eaten – then fruit and straw can’t be alive, because in being eaten they would be killed. I don’t have any grand conclusion as to what this means – (*the fact that no life forms were created during the first three days of creation*) – I simply think that it’s noteworthy that life doesn’t start appearing in the universe until after the third day. This is another distinguishing factor that differentiates days one through three, and four through six.

While it still may be somewhat difficult to conceive of creation week, this little tidbit has certainly made a world of difference for me. But how does any of this apply to angels existing before Adam and Eve were created? (*Got slightly off the subject – but that’s okay, because I had to make sense out of Genesis, as you will soon see why.*)

The reason I mentioned Genesis chapter 1 at all, is because if it’s going to be determined that there were any worlds that existed before earth was created, then this should be found in the account of creation, in Genesis chapter 1. According to the web site from which I derived information about the Exploding Planet Hypothesis being mentioned in the Bible, Genesis 1:2 was quoted as a supporting source, and is also linked with Jeremiah 4:23-26.

## Genesis 1:2

<sup>1</sup>*In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. <sup>2</sup>And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.*

The argument used with Genesis 1:2 is that the reference “*Earth was without form, and void*”, was interpreted as an already existing earth that was destroyed by a cataclysm. My question regarding this argument is such: How could earth, as well as any other world exist – in a universe where there is no sun, or stars? The 4<sup>th</sup> day of creation clearly lays the groundwork for the bare minimum requirements of a physical universe. Genesis 1:2 is on day one – not day four. For this reason, I wouldn’t quote Genesis 1:2 if I were trying to provide evidence in support of any civilization that predates Adam and Eve.

But does this mean that I’m through? Does Genesis chapter 1 destroy the argument that there were possibly other civilizations that preceded Adam and Eve – perhaps even on earth? Not particularly.

If on the fourth day of creation, God started *filling* the universe – i.e., turning it *on* so to speak, I see no reason why it couldn’t be assumed that during this particular day, other worlds were filled with life before earth was. Job 38:4-7, which I opened this section with, seems to indicate that this was the case. Also, Genesis chapter 1 doesn’t rule out this possibility. Now to say that earth itself had pre-Adam/Eve civilizations is a stretch, because Genesis clearly defines *man* as the imminent ruler of the earth. Also, if things as bizarre as the Sons of God mating with humans and bearing offspring that were giants is mentioned in Genesis, then why wouldn’t something as audacious as advanced, angelic civilizations preceding Adam and Eve be mentioned as well? Instead, there is no direct mention of such.

The second passage of scripture used by the Watcher’s web site I’ve been babbling about – linked with Genesis 1:2, used to support the theory of pre-Adam/Eve civilizations on earth is Jeremiah 4:23-26. In order to shed light on this reference, I’m including a few verses preceding, and following it.

Not to drastically change the subject, but the opening of this particular passage sounds like poor Jeremiah has a bad case of gas – *I had to say it*.

## Jeremiah 4:19-29

<sup>19</sup>*My bowels, my bowels! I am pained at my very heart; my heart maketh a noise in me; I cannot hold my peace, because thou hast heard, O my soul, the sound of the trumpet, the alarm of war.*

<sup>20</sup>*Destruction upon destruction is cried; for the whole land is spoiled: suddenly are my tents spoiled, and my curtains in a moment. <sup>21</sup>How long shall I see the standard, and hear the sound of the trumpet? <sup>22</sup>For my people is foolish, they have not known me; they are sottish children, and they have none understanding: they are wise to do evil, but to do good they have no knowledge. <sup>23</sup>I beheld the earth, and, lo, it was without form, and void; and the heavens, and they had no light. <sup>24</sup>I beheld the mountains, and, lo, they trembled, and all the hills moved lightly. <sup>25</sup>I beheld, and, lo, there was no man, and all the birds of the heavens were fled. <sup>26</sup>I beheld, and, lo, the fruitful place was a wilderness, and all the cities thereof were broken down at the presence of the LORD, and by his fierce anger. <sup>27</sup>For thus hath the LORD said, The whole land shall be desolate; yet will I not make a full end. <sup>28</sup>For thus shall the earth mourn, and the heavens above be black: because I have spoken it, I have purposed it, and will not repent, neither will I turn back from it. <sup>29</sup>The whole city shall flee for the noise of the horsemen and bowmen; they shall go into thickets, and climb up upon the rocks: every city shall be forsaken, and not a man dwell therein.*

The author of the web page I’ve been discussing contends that verses 23 through

26 refer to a complete annihilation of the earth. And I must admit the wording is convincing: “I beheld the earth, and lo, it was without form, and void.” This is the part that is linked with Genesis 1:2, because of a similarity in the wording. And as I stated before, I don’t think this connection should be made, because Genesis 1:2 is at a time when even the bare minimum requirements for a physical universe didn’t even exist yet.

It’s possible that Jeremiah could’ve seen pre-Adam/Eve civilizations being destroyed, and that he was talking about the destruction of the whole earth. This is indicated in the words that *there were no men, and all the cities thereof were broken down at the presence of the Lord*”. If there are cities, yet no men, then the cities must have been built by someone other than men, right? I doubt it. Perhaps God gave Jeremiah a glimpse of an ancient past – attributing its destruction as similar to the one about to befall Israel at the time this prophesy was given – but then again, it seems more likely to me that verse 29 gives the reason why there were no men. It’s not because none existed yet.

Reading a few verses after Jeremiah 4:26 reveals exactly why there were *no men*. In verse 29, “*The whole city shall flee for the noise of the horsemen and bowmen; they shall go into thickets, and climb upon the rocks; every city shall be forsaken, and not a man dwell therein.*”

At this point, you’re probably wondering just exactly what I agree with my source on, since I already refuted this person twice! While the part of his theory concerning a pre-Adam/Eve angelic civilization on earth I find hard to believe because of a lack of supporting biblical evidence, the possibility that there were angelic civilizations *in the universe on different planets* preceding Adam and Eve is another story. In light of all the evidence, especially including the face and pyramids on Mars, I’m compelled to believe that Mars definitely could’ve contained an advanced civilization that predates Adam and Eve.

Does the Bible contain any evidence concerning civilizations on other planets? It sure looks like it to me! Starting in Isaiah 14:12-15, there is a brief mention about Lucifer’s fall from glory.

#### Isaiah 14:12-15

<sup>12</sup>*How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations!* <sup>13</sup>*For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: <sup>14</sup>I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High. <sup>15</sup>Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit. <sup>16</sup>They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and consider thee, saying, Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms;*

When things become interesting concerning this particular event, is when it is recapitulated by one of my favorite – *articulate* – prophets, Ezekiel, in Ezekiel 28:11-19.

#### Ezekiel 28:11-19

<sup>11</sup>*Moreover the word of the LORD came unto me, saying, <sup>12</sup>Son of man, take up a lamentation upon the king of Tyrus, and say unto him, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Thou sealest up the sum, full of wisdom, and perfect in beauty. <sup>13</sup>Thou hast been in Eden the garden of God; every precious stone was thy covering, the sardius, topaz, and the diamond, the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper, the sapphire, the emerald, and the carbuncle, and gold: the workmanship of thy tabrets and of thy pipes was prepared in*

thee in the day that thou wast created. <sup>14</sup>Thou art the anointed cherub that covereth; and I have set thee so: thou wast upon the holy mountain of God; thou hast walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire. <sup>15</sup>Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till iniquity was found in thee. <sup>16</sup>By the multitude of thy merchandise they have filled the midst of thee with violence, and thou hast sinned: therefore I will cast thee as profane out of the mountain of God: and I will destroy thee, O covering cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire. <sup>17</sup>Thine heart was lifted up because of thy beauty, thou hast corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness: I will cast thee to the ground, I will lay thee before kings, that they may behold thee. <sup>18</sup>Thou hast defiled thy sanctuaries by the multitude of thine iniquities, by the iniquity of thy traffick; therefore will I bring forth a fire from the midst of thee, it shall devour thee, and I will bring thee to ashes upon the earth in the sight of all them that behold thee. <sup>19</sup>All they that know thee among the people shall be astonished at thee: thou shalt be a terror, and never shalt thou be any more.

This passage of scripture begins on somewhat of an odd note. While this scripture is a message addressed to the king of Tyrus, it immediately proceeds to speak to this king as if he's Satan. Certainly Tyrus never saw the Garden of Eden, nor was he considered an anointed Cherub, so Satan is obviously the one being spoken of, yet this message is specifically addressed to the king of Tyrus. I suppose a simple explanation would be that the king of Tyrus was possessed of Satan. This wouldn't be the first time a ruler was possessed with the devil, nor the last time. In any case, it's clear that this message is about Satan.

What strikes me dumb founded is the use of the peculiar phrase, *stones of fire*. *"<sup>14</sup>Thou art the anointed cherub that covereth; and I have set thee so: thou wast upon the holy mountain of God; thou hast walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire."* What could these stones of fire be, that would be worthy of one of the most powerful angelic beings ever created – to walk in their midst? Did Lucifer enjoy walking amidst pebbles for some strange reason? Hey, wait a minute, where else in scripture does it mention Satan walking about? Isn't there some mention of this in the book of Job?

Job 1:6-7

*<sup>6</sup>Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan came also among them. <sup>7</sup>And the LORD said unto Satan, Whence comest thou? Then Satan answered the LORD, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it.*

Hmm, this is strange. First Satan is walking among stones of fire, and then he's found walking to and fro in the earth, and up and down in it. Ah ha! Isn't the *earth* a stone – *even a stone of fire* – considering its core of over 4000 degrees Fahrenheit? Yes, this seems to make some fairly good sense. The earth, too, is a formidable stone; one worthy of such an incredibly awesome being as a cherub to desire to walk in the midst of it. Seeing that the *stones of fire* implies more than one stone (*planets*), this indicates that Satan had access to many worlds – i.e., planets containing life.

*"...And I will destroy thee, O covering cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire."* Spoke the Lord. Access among these *stones of fire* – (*planets*) – is very important, else why would they be linked with Satan's fall, and loss in glory. It appears that his free access among the planets in the universe was restricted, hence, he was no longer allowed to freely walk among the stones of fire – (*or travel freely amongst all the planets containing species throughout the universe*).

### 2.2.2 A modern perspective of the big picture:

Now I'm going to have a little fun, so ride along with me please, as I begin to babble away. Before Satan lost his *cosmic passport*, he figured he wasn't going to leave quietly. Instead, he took as many as he could with him as he went. Here's where Revelation 12:3-4 fills in the gaps.

#### Revelation 12:3-4

<sup>3</sup>*And there appeared another wonder in heaven; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads. <sup>4</sup>And his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth: and the dragon stood before the woman which was ready to be delivered, for to devour her child as soon as it was born.*

While Satan was busily deceiving as many worlds as possible, (*earth included*), before the police (*the archangel Michael*) came knocking on his door demanding he turn over his badge (*of authority over all the worlds under his command*), he managed to deceive as many as one third of the *stars*.<sup>17</sup> Michael eventually made it to Satan's home base – the planet *Asteria*, which God refers to as *Rapha*, which I will explain in a moment. But first – allow me to continue with this chain of events.

When Michael demanded Satan's badge and passport, and Satan refused, (*all of this metaphorically speaking of course*), God decided the time was ripe for Satan's judgement. In one of the most awesome displays of destructive power that could be imagined, God completely obliterated Satan's home world, blowing it up into countless fragments, which now comprise the asteroid belt.

This explosion of *Astera*, or *Rahab* if you will, I believe is alluded to in Ezekiel 28:16, 18, and is directly mentioned in Job 26:11-13, Psalm 89:10, and Isaiah 51:9.

#### Ezekiel 28:16, 18

<sup>16</sup>*By the multitude of thy merchandise they have filled the midst of thee with violence, and thou hast sinned: therefore I will cast thee as profane out of the mountain of God: and I will destroy thee, O covering cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire...* <sup>18</sup>*Thou hast defiled thy sanctuaries by the multitude of thine iniquities, by the iniquity of thy traffick; therefore will I bring forth a fire from the midst of thee, it shall devour thee, and I will bring thee to ashes upon the earth in the sight of all them that behold thee.*

#### Job 26:11-13

<sup>11</sup>*The pillars of heaven tremble and are astonished at his reproof. <sup>12</sup>He divideth the sea with his power, and by his understanding he smiteth through the proud (He smashed Rahab). <sup>13</sup>By his spirit he hath garnished (beautified) the heavens; his hand hath formed (made to writhe, or crushed) the crooked serpent.*

#### Psalms 89:10-11

<sup>10</sup>*Thou hast broken Rahab in pieces, as one that is slain; thou hast scattered thine enemies with thy strong arm. <sup>11</sup>The heavens are thine, the earth also is thine: as for the world and the fulness thereof, thou hast founded them.*

#### Isaiah 51:9

<sup>9</sup>*Awake, awake, put on strength, O arm of the LORD; awake, as in the ancient days, in the generations of old. Art thou not it that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?*

I find Ezekiel 28:16, 18 to be utterly remarkable, because this passage of scripture defines just exactly *how* God will destroy Satan from among the stones of fire; *He will bring out a fire from the midst of him – that will devour him.*

It isn't unmistakable that these other references to God destroying *Rahab* are in fact God's judgement being taken out on a planet in the solar system, though all three of these passages are fairly convincing in my opinion. What stands out clear to me is that

the destruction of Rahab is mentioned consistently with a reference to the heavens, (Job 26:11-13, Psalm 89:10), and also with the fall of Satan, (Job 26:11-13, and Isaiah 51:9).

The term Rahab means *pride*, or *strength*, in most uses. If Satan did have a home world, such a name for it would be fitting. The definitions for this term, Rapha, are displayed as follows, taken directly from Strong's exhaustive concordance: <sup>18</sup>

**rahab { rah'-hab }**

from 7292, bluster(-er); TWOT – 2125c; n m

AV – proud 2, strength 1; 3

GK – 8105 { **bh'r** }' }' }' }' }' }

1) pride, blusterer

1a) storm, arrogance (but only as names)

1a1) mythical sea monster

1a2) emblematic name of Egypt

**Rahab { rah'-hab }**

the same as 7293;; n m

AV – Rahab 3; 3

GK – 8105 { **bh'r** }

Rahab = “breadth”

1) storm, arrogance (but only as names)

1a) mythical sea monster

1b) emblematic name of Egypt

This explosion of Satan's home world served not only to judge all the inhabitants of Satan's home world – most of which were probably his faithful followers – but also those he deceived elsewhere. Civilizations on Mars – and possibly earth, (*which I find unlikely for reasons already discussed*), were gravely effected by this explosion. From this moment hence forth, God has reserved His divine judgement from this one event, utilizing fragments of this incredible explosion to bring about His wrath in various places throughout the universe, ever since this terrific explosion occurred. For this reason, comets such as Hale-Bopp, which passed in 1997, and asteroids like Toutatis, due for a scarily close pass in the year 2004, exist not only to serve as powerful reminders of the destruction of Satan's kingdom, but also serve as harbingers of doom reserving future judgement.<sup>19</sup>

Continuing along in my metaphor of this saga initiated when the earth was yet but a babe in the cradle of civilization, Satan *still wasn't through!* Instead of coming to his senses, realizing he was up against the Creator of the universe, and everything in it, he found another home in another world, and continued his rebellious activities. Since this event occurred, he has carried with him this particular disdain for God for destroying his home world.

From world to world he disobeyed, and defiantly has traveled throughout the eons, (*only because God has allowed him to – which Satan hates to admit*), wreaking havoc in all the places he goes. God, meanwhile, patiently sees all things unfolding throughout time, waiting for all those hosts of heaven that will follow this deceiving wretch to go. One by one the deceived approach God's divine throne and essentially

bend over, while God gives them the boot. God, if He wanted to, could end all this madness in less than a moment. But He simply patiently allows this war in heaven to drag on, probably for the sole purpose of allowing all the inhabitants of the universe ample opportunity to essentially approach His throne and present the bent-over posture, asking for the boot.

Sojourning this story in a present / past-tense perspective – *those things that are yet to come* – finally the time eventually comes when it looks like Satan will have nowhere left but earth to turn (Revelation 12:7-9). His options are running out.

#### Revelation 12:7-9

<sup>7</sup>And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, <sup>8</sup>And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven. <sup>9</sup>And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

But before becoming strictly confined to planet earth, he strengthens his position in his new home base, (*where he's probably possessed the world leader thereof – if he is physically dead*), and confides with the powerful allies native to this world, (*which are his new loyal followers*). He hopes that when the time comes that when he's isolated on earth, these allies will help him in his conquest of establishing his kingdom on earth, where he intends to rule from Jerusalem.

(*In his travels, he's made a host of formidable enemies – both evil and good – not to mention God Himself. Satan probably heavily depends on his allies for protection, and aid in other various means*). The war in heaven rages on – and he knows he has but a short time...

Eventually he ends up stuck on the earth, and because God's angelic armies have closed in on him, he hopes his friends he made on his prior base make good on their agreement. He hopes to use these allies to aid him in deceiving the world.

He proceeds to unleash his awesome plan of deception, first by *possessing* a key player in world political affairs – a trick he learned long ago, and had performed many times throughout earth's history. From this seat of power, he – (*the antichrist now*) explains to the inhabitants of earth that the cosmos is filled with vast resources, and other worlds of unfathomable beauty; in fact, he says he's a King from another world! And to prove it, he provides open transportation to his world so that the people of earth can see it for themselves. Furthermore, he displays mighty miracles, so that if it were possible, even the elect would believe.<sup>20</sup> (*Sound familiar? Didn't Christ say He was a King not of this earth? Isn't Satan such a copy cat!*)

He places all of his faith in his allies from the other world, even going so far as to claim that this home world, and those upon it, are *His god!* Daniel 12:36-39 makes reference of the antichrist's peculiar religion – which fits exactly as I have described here.

#### Daniel 12:36-39

<sup>36</sup>And the king shall do according to his will; and he shall exalt himself, and magnify himself above every god, and shall speak marvellous things against the God of gods, and shall prosper till the indignation be accomplished: for that that is determined shall be done. <sup>37</sup>Neither shall he regard the God of his fathers, nor the desire of women, nor regard any god: for he shall magnify himself above all. <sup>38</sup>But in his estate shall he honour the God of forces: and a god whom his fathers knew not shall he honour with



gold, and silver, and with precious stones, and pleasant things. <sup>39</sup>Thus shall he do in the most strong holds with a strange god, whom he shall acknowledge and increase with glory: and he shall cause them to rule over many, and shall divide the land for gain.

The *god of forces*, described here, has the following definitions given from Strong's Exhaustive Concordance:<sup>21</sup>

**ma`owz { maw-oze' } (also ma`uwz { maw-ooz' } ) or ma`oz { maw-oze' } (also ma`uz { maw-ooz' }**

from 5810; TWOT – 1578a; n m

AV – strength 24, strong 4, fortress 3, hold 2, forces 1, fort 1, rock 1, strengthen 1; 37

GK – 5057 {zw[om} & 5058 {@z[om}\*]

- 1) place or means of safety, protection, refuge, stronghold
  - 1a) place of safety, fastness, harbour, stronghold
  - 1b) refuge (of God) (fig.)
- 1c) human protection (fig.)

I don't think it's any coincidence that this *god of forces*, or as some translations put it, *a god of fortresses*, could easily be translated as “a *god of strength*”. Notice that this god bears an uncanny resemblance to the definition of *Rahab* – which is often translated *strength*. Satan, in his bitterness toward God for destroying his home world, may claim a *god of strength* as his god – because it symbolizes two central themes:

1. He longs for revenge concerning the destruction of his home world, Rahab. 2. Concerning his new home base, *this* location is a type of *Rahab*, and will be the source of his strength. Since this is all he has left at this point, he will claim this new Rahab as his god – his only hope for completing his plans of deception.

His allies from his other world eventually desire some form of payment for aiding him in his deception of the world, and so they are richly rewarded with many gifts, as previously mentioned in Daniel 12:36-39. Satan rewards them vastly with all the wealth he can scrape up from the earth.

As he rises to global power and authority, his awesome power becomes fully realized, when some of his enemies of his past catch up with him. The entire earth is engulfed in an attack from a species from yet another world – and he must call on his allies for help. The aerial displays circling the globe are spectacular; the battles so devastating and perilous, all the people of the entire earth are gripped with terror! With the threat of human extinction at hand, all the inhabitants of the earth decide to unite in a common cause to defeat these terrible foes, under the leadership of this remarkable warrior king – one who claims to rein with supreme power in another world. He graciously offers his services, and almost effortlessly, *with the aid of his allies*, annihilates these invaders.

Daniel 8:9-11

<sup>9</sup>And out of one of them came forth a little horn, which waxed exceeding great, toward the south, and toward the east, and toward the pleasant land. <sup>10</sup>And it waxed great, even to the host of heaven; and it cast down some of the host and of the stars to the ground, and stamped upon them. <sup>11</sup>Yea, he magnified himself even to the prince of the host, and by him the daily sacrifice was taken away, and the place of his

sanctuary was cast down.

**Matthew 24:15-29**

<sup>15</sup>*When ye therefore shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place, (whoso readeth, let him understand:)...* <sup>29</sup>*Immediately after the tribulation of those days shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken:*

**Luke 21:24-26**

<sup>24</sup>*And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled.* <sup>25</sup>*And there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth distress of nations, with perplexity; the sea and the waves roaring;* <sup>26</sup>*Men's hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth: for the powers of heaven shall be shaken.*

**Revelation 12:3-5**

<sup>3</sup>*And there appeared another wonder in heaven; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads.* <sup>4</sup>*And his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth: and the dragon stood before the woman which was ready to be delivered, for to devour her child as soon as it was born.*

Over time, Satan will have accumulated enough technology, and humans will have been trained sufficiently to duplicate a great deal of this technology from these allies from other worlds, that Satan decides he doesn't need them anymore. Once again, he uses another species from another world up for what he can get out of them, then turns his back on them. *"I don't need them anymore"*, he thinks to himself, *"I have all their technology at my disposal, and I'm capable of settling my own matters now without their help. Earth... is my new home... my new Rahab."* From this point on, his primary bent is on assuming the throne of a god-ship, and receiving the worship of the people of earth through complete and utter tyrannical control.

While all of this information regarding Satan's journey throughout time, from before humanity even existed, is somewhat fictional, it does coincide with a number of scriptures, as you have seen. Only time will tell if any of this information is even remotely true. If it is – then you the reader have been blessed with a remarkably modern perspective of *the Big Picture* – pertaining to events of the past, present, and future, not only in the earth, but also in the heavens.

## References

- 1 *Enhanced Strong's Lexicon*, (Oak Harbor, WA: Logos Research Systems, Inc.) 1995.
- 2 *Rapture of the Church*, [http://home.swbell.net/jpdp/Rapture\\_B\\_\\_\\_W\\_Printable.html](http://home.swbell.net/jpdp/Rapture_B___W_Printable.html), 16 March, 1999.
- 3 M.J. Agee, *Jesus is Coming Soon*, <http://www.kiwi.net/~mjagee/>, 10 August, 1999.
- 4 Hal Lindsey, *Planet Earth – 2000 A.D.*, Western Front, Ltd. Palos Vardes CA., 1994.
- 5 Revelation 21:1-2
- 6 <http://www.mt.net/~lwatcher/stones.html>, *Cydonia Mars: The “Stones of Fire” and Pre-Adamite Civilizations*, August 1999.
- 7 <http://www.mt.net/~lwatcher/newun.html>, *Satan's Plan to Escape Judgement*, August 1999.
- 8 Ibid. (6)
- 9 Pat Dasch, Allan Treiman, <http://cass.jsc.nasa.gov/publications/slidesets/marslife.html>, *Ancient Life on Mars???*, 2 April, 1997.
- 10 Malin Space Science Systems, <http://barsoom.msسس.com/education/facepage/face.html>, *The “Face on Mars”*, 1995.
- 11 Ibid. (6)
- 12 Ibid. (6)
- 13 Ibid. (6)
- 14 Ibid. (6)
- 15 *The NIV Study Bible*, Zondervan Bible Publishers, Grand Rapids Michigan, 1985.
- 16 Chuck Missler, Mark Eastman, *The Creator Beyond Time and Space*, The Word for Today, 1996, Pages 12-17.
- 17 Revelation 1:4.
- 18 Ibid. (1)
- 19 Ibid. (6)

20 Mark 13:22.

21 Ibid. (1)

## CHAPTER 10: THE REALMS OF HELL

### 1. Understanding hell:

#### 1.1 Forward:

Just as I've discussed topics relying on information concerning the nature of heaven – or the heavens, I likewise have also discussed several topics that have relied upon the existence of a realm called *hell*. In essence, if I'm going to be talking about demons, devils, lost souls, ghosts, etc., a firm understanding of what, and where hell is – is required. This chapter, therefore, is dedicated to establishing a working knowledge of this horrible place, in order that all of the previous topics relying upon this understanding will be understood more thoroughly.

Metaphorically speaking, by discussing the previously mentioned topics without first discussing hell, I've jumped into Algebra without first establishing a foundation in rudimentary mathematics. I would thus term this chapter "Hell 101", and the previous chapter "Heaven 101", and recommend reading it for a firmer comprehension in relation to the other topics discussed in this book.

You might be asking yourself at this point, exactly why did I organize this book in such a fashion, such that rudimentary topics are explained after more advanced topics? The answer is simple; the more advanced topics are generally more interesting, and it is my intention to *grab* the reader's attention, before divulging into rudimentary details. That's not to say that this chapter shouldn't be interesting – I just think it would be more likely to retain a reader's interest by starting with topics such as *Ghosts in the Bible*, instead of *Understanding Hell*.

Email me if I'm wrong, and tell me so - [jmilor@hotmail.com](mailto:jmilor@hotmail.com). Anyway, on with this chapter!

#### 1.2 Types of death:

Two kinds of death, each of which may be temporary or permanent, are spoken of in scripture. One is the death of the body, which is caused by the separation of the spirit from the body; (The body without the spirit is dead – James 2:6). The phrase "Gave up the ghost", used 4 times in the Old Testament, and 6 times in the New Testament, refers to this spiritual separation from the physical body.

The other type of death is spiritual; it pertains to being spiritually separated from God. Even those physically alive are referred to in some places in scripture as being spiritually dead. In fact, all those that don't accept Christ's work of salvation on the cross are currently in this category, despite the fact that they may still physically be alive. Ephesians 2:1, 1 Timothy 5:6, and 1 John 3:14 are all examples of spiritual death.

#### 1.3 Death and hell:

During Old Testament times, the term *hell* was frequently used to describe death. This place is the destination of those that have been spiritually dead, and complete the

death process with physical death.

Hell is the English translation of the Hebrew word *Sheol*, and also the equivalent Greek word *Hades*. These terms were used to describe the place of **all** departed spirits.<sup>1</sup> Hell during Old Testament times was composed of three parts; **paradise**, torment, and a dividing chasm. (*Remember I mentioned paradise being in Hades in the previous chapter? Well, now you will discover what I was talking about*). Christ explained the three locations within hell when discussing the parable of Lazarus and the rich man in Luke 16:19-31.

#### Luke 16:19-31 (Lazarus and the rich man)

<sup>19</sup> *There was a certain rich man, which was clothed in purple and fine linen, and fared sumptuously every day: <sup>20</sup>And there was a certain beggar named Lazarus, which was laid at his gate, full of sores, <sup>21</sup>And desiring to be fed with the crumbs which fell from the rich man's table: moreover the dogs came and licked his sores. <sup>22</sup>And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom: the rich man also died, and was buried; <sup>23</sup>And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom. <sup>24</sup>And he cried and said, Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue; for I am tormented in this flame. <sup>25</sup>But Abraham said, Son, remember that thou in thy lifetime receivedst thy good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things: but now he is comforted, and thou art tormented. <sup>26</sup>And beside all this, between us and you there is a great gulf fixed: so that they which would pass from hence to you cannot; neither can they pass to us, that would come from thence. <sup>27</sup>Then he said, I pray thee therefore, father, that thou wouldest send him to my father's house: <sup>28</sup>For I have five brethren; that he may testify unto them, lest they also come into this place of torment. <sup>29</sup>Abraham saith unto him, They have Moses and the prophets; let them hear them. <sup>30</sup>And he said, Nay, father Abraham: but if one went unto them from the dead, they will repent. <sup>31</sup>And he said unto him, If they hear not Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded, though one rose from the dead.*

As mentioned in the previous chapter, *paradise*, also known as *Abraham's bosom*, was contained within Hades before Christ was crucified. The fact that this paradise wasn't the 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup>, or 3<sup>rd</sup> heavens can be affirmed by the fact that Jesus went to a place called *paradise* after He was crucified – which wasn't the visible expanse around the earth. It wasn't the abode of God the Father, either, because after He was crucified, Jesus informed Mary in John 20:17 that He had not yet ascended to the Father.

#### Luke 23:39-43

<sup>39</sup> *And one of the malefactors which were hanged railed on him, saying, If thou be Christ, save thyself and us. <sup>40</sup>But the other answering rebuked him, saying, Dost not thou fear God, seeing thou art in the same condemnation? <sup>41</sup>And we indeed justly; for we receive the due reward of our deeds: but this man hath done nothing amiss. <sup>42</sup>And he said unto Jesus, Lord, remember me when thou comest into thy kingdom. <sup>43</sup>And Jesus said unto him, Verily I say unto thee, To day shalt thou be with me in paradise.*

#### John 20:17

<sup>17</sup> *Jesus saith unto her, Touch me not; for I am not yet ascended to my Father: but go to my brethren, and say unto them, I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and to my God, and your God.*

In addition to these facts pointing to the conclusion that paradise before the crucifixion of Christ was located within Hades, consider that when King Saul used a witch to summon the prophet Samuel in 1 Samuel 28:11-15, scripture states that Samuel was brought up *out of the earth*.

#### 1 Samuel 28:11-15

*<sup>11</sup>Then said the woman, Whom shall I bring up unto thee? And he said, Bring me up Samuel. <sup>12</sup>And when the woman saw Samuel, she cried with a loud voice: and the woman spake to Saul, saying, Why hast thou deceived me? for thou art Saul. <sup>13</sup>And the king said unto her, Be not afraid: for what sawest thou? And the woman said unto Saul, I saw gods ascending out of the earth. <sup>14</sup>And he said unto her, What form is he of? And she said, An old man cometh up; and he is covered with a mantle. And Saul perceived that it was Samuel, and he stooped with his face to the ground, and bowed himself. <sup>15</sup>And Samuel said to Saul, Why hast thou disquieted me, to bring me up?*

Certainly Samuel, a prophet of God, wouldn't be found within the depths of hell! Instead, he was in a place known as paradise, or Abraham's bosom. This place was definitely not a place of torment, though both the place of torment, and paradise, at that time in earth's history, were located within the depths of the earth.

#### 1.4 Hell became altered:

After the resurrection of Jesus Christ, hell was altered. Those trapped in hell that accepted Christ when He went there to preach to them and free them – were released (Isaiah 9:2-4, 1 Peter 3:18). Some were even physically resurrected and united with their physical bodies (Matthew 27:50-53). No more would the righteous dead go to a place separated from God the same as those who don't accept Christ as their personal Lord and Savior. Instead, they are now in the presence of the Lord, as Paul states in 2 Corinthians 5:8.

#### Isaiah 9:2-4

*<sup>2</sup>The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light: they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined. <sup>3</sup>Thou hast multiplied the nation, and not increased the joy: they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil. <sup>4</sup>For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor, as in the day of Midian.*

#### 1 Peter 3:18

*<sup>18</sup>For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit: <sup>19</sup>By which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison; <sup>20</sup>Which sometime were disobedient, when once the longsuffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was a preparing, wherein few, that is, eight souls were saved by water.*

#### Matthew 27:50-53

*<sup>50</sup> Jesus, when he had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the ghost. <sup>51</sup>And, behold, the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom; and the earth did quake, and the rocks rent; <sup>52</sup>And the graves were opened; and many bodies of the saints which slept arose, <sup>53</sup>And came out of the graves after his resurrection, and went into the holy city, and appeared unto many.*

#### 2 Corinthians 5:8

*<sup>8</sup>We are confident, I say, and willing rather to be absent from the body, and to be present with the Lord.*

While the paradise portion of hell became completely vacated after Jesus was resurrected, the torment portion of hell has remained. Concerning this portion of hell, it shouldn't be confused with the eternal lake of fire mentioned 4 times in the book of Revelation, (Revelation 19:20, 20:10, 14, and 15). It can be easy to confuse the lake of fire with the current hell that exists, because the current hell that exists contains a place of burning torment, similar to the lake of fire.

The evidence of burning torment in the current hell that exists can be seen in the

previously mentioned description of Lazarus and the rich man, in Luke 16:19-31. In the description of Lazarus and the rich man, it's clear that the rich man isn't in the lake of fire, because he's calling out to Lazarus who is in Abraham's Bosom. Abraham's bosom is a place of the past, which no longer exists; Jesus released the righteous dead from this place after His resurrection. The lake of fire is a place in the future, so it's impossible for the rich man to be in a *hell of the future* and calling out to someone in a place that no longer exists.

### 1.5 Differences between hell (*Hades*), and the lake of fire:

There are four primary differences between the lake of fire, and the current hell that exists. I will briefly list these four differences, then elaborate upon them with scriptural references.

First of all, as I've already stated, the current hell is *current*, while the lake of fire is in the future. Secondly, unlike the lake of fire's burning torment for *all* its inhabitants, the current hell that exists is a place of varying torment. Thirdly, the current hell that exists is also only a temporary hell, because it will eventually be cast into the lake of fire, as described in Revelation 20:15-16. The lake of fire, on the other hand, is permanent. It is referred to as the second death, from which there is no resurrection. Finally, the last difference between the current hell that exists and the lake of fire, is that the current hell that exists is a place where spirits go, not physical bodies. It is true that people are buried in the earth – which can be defined as the uppermost level of hell, but the current place of burning torment is met only by spirits. As for the lake of fire, all cast into it are actually physically cast into it.

#### Revelation 20:15-16 (Hell is cast into the lake of fire)

<sup>13</sup>*And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works.* <sup>14</sup>*And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death.* <sup>15</sup>*And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.*

Varying torment, or *degrees* of hell, which I discussed in a previous chapter, are inferred by the existence of the *lowest* hell, mentioned in Deuteronomy 32:22, and in Psalms 86:13. (If there is a *lower* hell – then there must also be *upper* hells). A hell of varying torment could also explain the many varying adjectives used to describe it.

#### Deuteronomy 32:22

<sup>22</sup>*For a fire is kindled in mine anger, and shall burn unto the lowest hell, and shall consume the earth with her increase, and set on fire the foundations of the mountains.*

#### Psalms 86:13

<sup>3</sup>*For great is thy mercy toward me: and thou hast delivered my soul from the lowest hell.*

### 1.6 Degrees of hell:

I find Revelation 20:15 particularly interesting, because it mentions that the spirits of the dead are listed in three places; the sea, death itself, and hell. When analyzing the Greek term for *death*, many definitions are given. These are as follows: <sup>2</sup>



## **thanatos { than'-at-os }**

GK – 2505 { qavnato" }

GK – together with 1 115 { ajqavnato" }

- 1) the death of the body
  - 1a) that separation (whether natural or violent) of the soul and the body by which the life on earth is ended
  - 1b) with the implied idea of future misery in hell
    - 1b1) the power of death
  - 1c) since the nether world, the abode of the dead, was conceived as being very dark, it is equivalent to the region of thickest darkness i.e. figuratively, a region enveloped in the darkness of ignorance and sin
- 2) metaph., the loss of that life which alone is worthy of the name,
  - 2a) the misery of the soul arising from sin, which begins on earth but lasts and increases after the death of the body in hell
- 3) the miserable state of the wicked dead in hell
- 4) in the widest sense, death comprising all the miseries arising from sin, as well physical death as the loss of a life consecrated to God and blessed in him on earth, to be followed by wretchedness in hell.

I think the best definition from Strong's Enhanced Lexicon that applies to Revelation 20:15 is definition 1c, primarily because this is a definition that distinguishes death from hell, (even though it sort of is the same thing – which I will elaborate upon in a second). I think this is an important observation, because hell is specifically listed as a separate location from death, and the sea. Furthermore, death, also widely referred to as the grave, is actually located within the earth. Beneath the sea, likewise, can be construed as a region within the earth. Both the grave, (buried in the ground), and the depths of the sea, are known to be places of darkness inside the earth.

### 1.7 The regions of hell (*Hades*) – inner earth:

Since hell may have varying degrees of torment, as inferred by Deuteronomy 32:22, and Psalms 86:13, then one could logically conclude that disincarnate spirits inhabit the inner regions of the earth, and that some are closer to the surface of the earth than others. The lowest hell that I just mentioned, is probably just as scripture indicates – *the lowest*. I take this to mean the very center of the earth, where science now knows an inferno exists.

I realize that there is a dimensional aspect to hell that only spirits can perceive; this is obvious. Miners and cave explorers don't come running out of caverns screaming about seeing the inhabitants of hell! (*But most of us have heard about haunted grave yards though – which indicates that we do sometimes perceive this realm. I'll get back to this momentarily...*)

Just as our physical and spiritual bodies are intertwined with one another, so are the physical and spiritual dimensions of earth. The physical and spiritual realms are intertwined in such a way that the actual physical location of hell is, in fact, located within the depths of the earth. It just can't be perceived by the inhabitants of the physical realm, (*under normal circumstances*), because God has obviously placed a dimensional

barrier that divides the living from the dead.

Upper hells are the region between the center of the earth, and the surface of the earth. For this reason, hell is given many varying descriptions, ranging from sleep, (*which is usually referred to as the grave – the upper most level of hell closest to the surface of the earth*), to darkness and oblivion, and finally burning torment, (*which is obviously the lowest hell*).

Furthermore, it could also be argued that the regions outside of the earth could be the *outer darkness*, or at least part of it – as spoken of in scripture.

Consider all the terms used to describe hell. Sleep isn't particularly any big deal to most people, but burning certainly is! If hell is perceived as having varying levels of punishment, then it logically follows that the descriptions of hell begin with mild states of being, and end in utter indescribable anguish.

### 1.8 The journey of a lost soul:

Following is the journey of a lost soul, complete with scriptural references. The journey of the soul that this illustration is about is a soul that falls completely to the lowest depths of hell, which may not be the case for all lost souls. Factors that might contribute to a soul resisting falling into the lower depths of hell might be the amount of life force that a spirit has at the point of physical death. Moral decay may also play a contributing factor. But always for all lost souls that have rejected Christ, the lake of fire is their ultimate destination.

---

A lost soul begins with a simple *sleep* (John 11:11), such as *the sleep of death* (Psalms 13:3), *the shadow of death* (Psalms 107:10), or a *rest in the dust of the earth* (Daniel 12:2). Since this period of the afterlife is sometimes called *sleep* in scripture, one could assume that this lost soul while in this upper region of the earth still has the ability to think – though its thoughts are confused and jumbled, similar to the jumbled thoughts of dreams. The lost spirit's thoughts are mixed up, because the place where it is at is a place that *has no order* (Job 10:21-22).

The lost spirit slowly descends into the lower regions of the earth, where there is *darkness* (Jude 1:6), in a *land of darkness* (Job 10:21-22). Here, the darkness envelops the spirit in a *mist of darkness* (2 Peter 2:17), where there is nothing but the *blackness of darkness* (Jude 1:13), and the spirit eventually forgets even what light is, and even the *light is as darkness* (Job 10:21-22).

During all of this time in the dark, the lost spirit eventually becomes aware of the fact that it is dead, yet wonders how it can continue to think. Coming to the never-ending conclusion that all hope is lost, the spirit realizes that there is *no hope for truth* (Isaiah 38:18); it was deceived, and now remains in a *prison* (1 Peter 3:18), where there is no escape.

With the realization of utter hopelessness, and nothing to look forward to but *eternal damnation* (Matthew 23:33), the darkness becomes emotionally unbearable, and has reached a point that it can become no darker. Now, in the *outer darkness* (Matthew 8:12, 22:13, 25:30), the spirit gives up all hope of even wanting to remember anything; *there is no remembrance* (Psalms 6:5).

Has this spirit found any comfort in being a mindless awareness, trapped in a prison of darkness? Far from it; just when the spirit has succeeded in convincing itself that it is nothing – that it doesn't even exist – it then begins a rapid descent into *the pit* (Isaiah 38:17). Slipping down further and faster, the spirit now encounters too much emotional pain to ignore. Suddenly it falls deep into *the pit of corruption* (Isaiah 38:17), where all of the emotions associated with the corruption of sin – rape this lost soul's inner most being.

Finally, the lost soul has made its complete journey to the center of the earth, where it encounters an incredible *burning* (Luke 16:24) all over, within and without, from flames of *hell fire* (Luke 16:24; Matthew 5:22) that rage with a fury that *is never quenched* (Mark 9:43-49). In this final destination, the lost spirit can't discern which is more painful, the sensation of rotting, where *the worm dieth not* (Mark 9:43-49), the emotional pain of sinful corruption – which dwells in the unbearable outer darkness, or the hell fire that consumes every fiber of its essence. Nothing is left but *weeping and gnashing of teeth* (Matthew 8:12, 22:13, 25:30).

After an indeterminable amount of time, there comes a day when suddenly this lost soul is resurrected, and finds itself standing before the very throne of God. Judgement Day has arrived, and all spirits are judged according to their works. It becomes weightily evident to all that without the Mediator, who is Christ, no one has a chance. All those condemned to perish in the *lake of fire* (Revelation 19:20, 20:10, 14, and 15) have no excuse; their judgement can not be refuted, for God's judgements are perfect and just in every way.

When this judgement concludes that this lost spirit has in essence cared nothing for God sending His own Son to die for it, it is then cast into the eternal lake of fire, both *physically, and spiritually* (Matthew 5:29-30, 10:28, 18:9, 23:33; Mark 9:43-49). This torment is final, and is, if anything, a worse place than the spirit was in before it was resurrected to be judged.

Sobering, is it not? The good news is that nobody has to go to hell! Many will, because of a stubborn refusal to accept Jesus, but those who are open minded enough to simply put aside all their preconceived notions about Christ, and simply ask Him if He's real or not – should get a resounding “YES”!

This answer may not be audible, but if you the reader have made this request of Jesus, then keep all of your senses open – you will receive an answer. Scripture states that Jesus is always waiting at the door of our hearts; asking Him if He exists is step #1. If you have never asked Him if He's real, you should start now. When you receive His “YES”, then perhaps the Holy Spirit has spoken to you, and it's time to ask for forgiveness of all your sins, and ask Jesus to come into your heart, and change your life! Truly I say unto all readers this much; nothing in this book is more important than establishing a personal relationship with Christ.

---

John 11:11-14

<sup>11</sup>These things said he: and after that he saith unto them, Our friend Lazarus sleepeth; but I go, that I may awake him out of sleep. <sup>12</sup>Then said his disciples, Lord, if he sleep, he shall do well. <sup>13</sup>Howbeit Jesus spake of his death: but they thought that he had spoken of taking of rest in sleep. <sup>14</sup>Then said Jesus unto them plainly, Lazarus is dead.

Psalms 13:3

<sup>3</sup>Consider and hear me, O LORD my God: lighten mine eyes, lest I sleep the sleep of death;  
Psalms 107:10-11

<sup>10</sup>Such as sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, being bound in affliction and iron; <sup>11</sup>Because they rebelled against the words of God, and contemned the counsel of the most High:

Daniel 12:2

<sup>2</sup>And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt.

Job 10:21-22

<sup>21</sup>Before I go whence I shall not return, even to the land of darkness and the shadow of death; <sup>22</sup>A land of darkness, as darkness itself; and of the shadow of death, without any order, and where the light is as darkness.

Jude 1:6

<sup>6</sup>And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day.

2 Peter 2:17

<sup>17</sup>These are wells without water, clouds that are carried with a tempest; to whom the mist of darkness is reserved for ever.

Jude 1:13

<sup>13</sup>Raging waves of the sea, foaming out their own shame; wandering stars, to whom is reserved the blackness of darkness for ever.

Isaiah 38:17-19

<sup>17</sup>Behold, for peace I had great bitterness: but thou hast in love to my soul delivered it from the pit of corruption: for thou hast cast all my sins behind thy back. <sup>18</sup>For the grave cannot praise thee, death can not celebrate thee: they that go down into the pit cannot hope for thy truth. <sup>19</sup>The living, the living, he shall praise thee, as I do this day: the father to the children shall make known thy truth.

1 Peter 3:18-20

<sup>18</sup>For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit: <sup>19</sup>By which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison; <sup>20</sup>Which sometime were disobedient, when once the longsuffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was a preparing, wherein few, that is, eight souls were saved by water.

Matthew 23:33

<sup>33</sup>Ye serpents, ye generation of vipers, how can ye escape the damnation of hell?

Matthew 8:12

<sup>12</sup>But the children of the kingdom shall be cast out into outer darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

Matthew 22:13

<sup>13</sup>Then said the king to the servants, Bind him hand and foot, and take him away, and cast him into outer darkness; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

Matthew 25:30

<sup>30</sup>And cast ye the unprofitable servant into outer darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

Psalms 6:5

<sup>5</sup>For in death there is no remembrance of thee: in the grave who shall give thee thanks?

Luke 16:24

(See previous reference in this chapter)

Matthew 5:22

<sup>22</sup>But I say unto you, That whosoever is angry with his brother without a cause shall be in danger of the judgment: and whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council: but whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

Mark 9:43-49

<sup>43</sup>And if thy hand offend thee, cut it off: it is better for thee to enter into life maimed, than having two hands to go into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched: <sup>44</sup>Where their worm dieth not, and the

*fire is not quenched. <sup>45</sup>And if thy foot offend thee, cut it off: it is better for thee to enter halt into life, than having two feet to be cast into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched: <sup>46</sup>Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched. <sup>47</sup>And if thine eye offend thee, pluck it out: it is better for thee to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye, than having two eyes to be cast into hell fire: <sup>48</sup>Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched. <sup>49</sup>For every one shall be salted with fire, and every sacrifice shall be salted with salt.*

Matthew 22:13

*<sup>13</sup>Then said the king to the servants, Bind him hand and foot, and take him away, and cast him into outer darkness; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.*

Matthew 25:30

*<sup>30</sup>And cast ye the unprofitable servant into outer darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.*

Revelation 19:20

*<sup>20</sup>And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone.*

Revelation 20:10-15

*<sup>10</sup>And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever. <sup>11</sup>And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them. <sup>12</sup>And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. <sup>13</sup>And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. <sup>14</sup>And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. <sup>15</sup>And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.*

Matthew 5:29-30

*<sup>29</sup>And if thy right eye offend thee, pluck it out, and cast it from thee: for it is profitable for thee that one of thy members should perish, and not that thy whole body should be cast into hell.*

Matthew 10:28

*<sup>28</sup>And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.*

Matthew 18:9

*<sup>9</sup>And if thine eye offend thee, pluck it out, and cast it from thee: it is better for thee to enter into life with one eye, rather than having two eyes to be cast into hell fire.*

## 2. Propaganda City:

Before leaving this section of the book, I figured I would throw in another theory of mine that finds relevance in this particular chapter. This theory concerns the apparently vacated *paradise* portion of hell. Recall when I mentioned that those trapped in the paradise portion of hell were released when Jesus was crucified, (Isaiah 9:2-4; 1 Peter 3:18), and some were even physically resurrected and united with their physical bodies (Matthew 27:50-53). What has become of this vacated paradise?

According to scripture, there are many evil, powerful beings that inhabit areas of the earth, and aren't restricted within the confines of hell. Would it not be plausible to assume that they might have taken claim to this deserted paradise? Why not? And aside from general comfort, what might they use such a place for?

You might think I'm going to get off the subject – but I'm not. Please bear with me a moment. Back when I was in the Army, (*you're probably getting tired of this opener by now*), I once patrolled the DMZ (Demilitarized Zone) that divided North and

South Korea. North Korea, in a momentous effort to generate propaganda for how immensely wealthy their nation is, (*NOT*), built an *fake* city right on their southern boarder. This is a fake city, complete with busily working citizens; it's only purpose is to present the appearance to South Koreans that North Koreans are thriving economically, socially, politically, and in general, enjoying their fulfilled lives. The North Korean flag raises every morning – (the largest flag in the world if I recall correctly) – and bus loads of government employees dressed in business suits carrying brief cases get off. They immediately begin walking around, going from building to building – apparently just *looking busy*. (I've monitored their movements, and can readily testify that they do, in fact, go through this mindless activity every day.)

When seeing so many shows on TV, and reading about so many NDEs (Near-Death-Experiences), almost invariably people describe what they perceive as heaven.<sup>3,4</sup> I have read a few cases where people described going to hell,<sup>5,6</sup> but the ratio of hellish experiences compared to heavenly experiences is clear; I'd say at least 90% or more NDEs are heavenly experiences. Could it be that there are this many saved Christians? Isn't the path to the Kingdom of God strait and narrow? Aren't there few saved souls that enter into heaven in comparison to the many lost souls that take the wide path to destruction?

The strange thing about these testimonies is that often those describing their experiences aren't even Christians. So, what's happening here? Are non-Christians seeing heaven? How could they? Jesus Himself said that nobody could even *see* the kingdom of heaven, unless that person repents, accepts Him (Jesus), and is born again (John 3:3).

John 3:3

<sup>3</sup>*Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.*

So what are people seeing during their NDEs? While I'm certain there are a number of other plausible explanations, such as hypoxia of the brain (lack of oxygen) producing a mass of endorphins – and flooding the optical center of the neural cortex which all together might produce a sense of well being – and visual images of light,<sup>7,8</sup> I wouldn't be surprised if the enemy has created his own propaganda city. It's primary function would be to allow non-Christians a glimpse into a pseudo-heaven, so that when they return to the realm of the living, they are deceived into thinking they will go to heaven when they die. Even worse, books that are written containing these testimonies can be highly detrimental. They might deceive many into thinking it's possible to get to heaven without Christ.

While this possible plan of Satan might back-fire occasionally, and people seeing what they perceive as heaven turn toward God after their NDEs, the number of those that remain deceived might be worth Satan's effort. In my own study of the NDE phenomenon, most non-Christians that have had heavenly NDE experiences tend to remain deceived, and fall into New Age mysticism, rather than the truth of Christ.

## References

- 1 *Enhanced Strong's Lexicon*, (Oak Harbor, WA: Logos Research Systems, Inc.) 1995.
- 2 Ibid. (1)
- 3 The International Association for Near Death Studies, *The Near-Death-Experience*, <http://www.iands.org/nde.html>, August 1999.
- 4 Dr Karl Jansen, *Ketamine and Quantum Psychiatry*, [http://www.lycaeum.org/drugs/Cyclohexamines/Ketamine/Ketamine\\_Quantum.html](http://www.lycaeum.org/drugs/Cyclohexamines/Ketamine/Ketamine_Quantum.html), 16 July, 1999.
- 5 Dr. D. James Kennedy, *Why I Believe*, Word Books Publisher, Waco, TX., 1980, pages 60-80.
- 6 J. Isamu Yamamoto, *The Near-Death Experience, Part Two: Alternative Explanations*, an article from the Christian Research Journal, Summer 1992, page 14.
- 7 Ibid. (3)
- 8 Ibid. (6)

# PART IV

## *PHENOMENON. AND THEORIES*

---

Just to make things interesting, I thought I would add this final section which contains several different metaphysical topics. Many of these topics were mentioned in the previous two parts of this book. In this part of this book, these topics will be discussed in depth, hopefully leaving readers with a rich, healthy perspective of the Christian paradigm as it applies to certain metaphysical topics.



## CHAPTER 11: ASTRAL PROJECTION IN THE BIBLE

In chapter four of this book, when discussing the subject of the balance between the spiritual and technological advancement of a species, I cited the Tower of Babel as an example when God intervened in the development of human civilization. Genesis 11:1-9 is the scripture I referred to, which not only bares relevance to the balance between the spiritual and technological advancement of a species, but also might explain why God separates the more intelligent species with barriers, such as vast distance, dimensional variances, or other means.

### Genesis 11:1-9

*<sup>1</sup>And the whole earth was of one language, and of one speech. <sup>2</sup>And it came to pass, as they journeyed from the east, that they found a plain in the land of Shinar; and they dwelt there. <sup>3</sup>And they said one to another, Go to, let us make brick, and burn them thoroughly. And they had brick for stone, and slime had they for mortar. <sup>4</sup>And they said, Go to, let us build us a city and a tower, whose top may reach unto heaven; and let us make us a name, lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth. <sup>5</sup>And the LORD came down to see the city and the tower, which the children of men built. <sup>6</sup>And the LORD said, Behold, the people is one, and they have all one language; and this they begin to do: and now nothing will be restrained from them, which they have imagined to do. <sup>7</sup>Go to, let us go down, and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another's speech. <sup>8</sup>So the LORD scattered them abroad from thence upon the face of all the earth: and they left off to build the city. <sup>9</sup>Therefore is the name of it called Babel; because the LORD did there confound the language of all the earth: and from thence did the LORD scatter them abroad upon the face of all the earth.*

### 1. Reaching to the heavens?

In this scripture, we begin with a people that have gathered together to make a city, and a tower. These people set out to make a name for themselves, and the tower they were going to make was to reach into heaven. Most theologians interpret this passage of scripture as the description of a time when man was filled with pride, and was accumulating a vast amount of knowledge; a time very similar to today. The Tower of Babel, it is assumed, was designed to be very high, reaching far up into the sky, hence, the term *heaven*. But in order to be obtaining knowledge to such a degree that God intervened and put an end to it, I think this passage deserves unique attention. The assumption that these people were filled with pride, and were building a tall building simply doesn't seem to me to be a big enough reason for God to intervene.

As I recently stated, Genesis 11:1-9 refers to a time very similar to today. Nowadays, mankind is building towers that reach unto heaven; high rise momentous structures that certainly dwarf the estimated 300 ft. tall structures the people in Genesis were capable of making with their primitive bricks of clay.<sup>1</sup> Today, we also have towers that *literally* reach unto heaven – the heavens beyond the sky; towers which port space shuttles that blast off, and cruise the solar system. Could it be possible that the Tower of Babel was a launch pad, reaching to the heavens in this manner?

Others have purported this theory, but I do not. It's my opinion that if there were spacecraft in those days, (*which I believe there were*), I seriously doubt they were made by us. Furthermore, if there were spacecraft that came here from other worlds, they would've had to be advanced to the degree that they wouldn't have to rely upon a launch pad. (*A craft capable of transcending light speed shouldn't need a launch pad.*)

While I don't espouse the theory of a launch pad, I do believe that the Tower of Babel, as well as other similar momentous constructions, may have been rendezvous points between mankind, and beings from other worlds.

## 2. Literally reaching to the heavens – by spiritual means:

What kind of knowledge was obtained by the people mentioned in Genesis 11 that prompted God step in and put an end to it? I think the answer to this question is found not in scientific technology, but in spiritual knowledge. I would now like to address the metaphysical phenomenon known as *Astral Projection*. I'm not vehemently arguing that I'm right about the theory I'm about to espouse. I'm simply pointing out a few clues that make me think that I may have discovered the existence of astral projection – in the Bible.

Astral projection is the art of separating one's consciousness, or *spirit*, from the physical body.<sup>2</sup> While the New Age movement is currently popularizing this activity as the latest craze for self-actualization, it's actually been around as long as religion has been around; it's found in many ancient religions.<sup>3</sup> It finds its roots in altered states of consciousness, which are often induced by ingesting psychedelic drugs.<sup>4</sup> Nearly every religion in the world with shaman priests includes rituals involving the ingestion of psychedelic drugs, in which the shaman induces him/herself into a trance, and experiences a transcendent state where mind, (*or spirit*), and body may separate. Worshippers of such religions are also known to partake in rituals of this sort.

Reports of astral projection, also known as OBEs, (Out-of-Body-Experiences), are often preceded by one of three primary triggers; NDEs, (Near-Death-Experiences), medical operations involving powerful anesthetics, and the use of powerful psychedelic drugs. While these three triggers are distinct, it should be noted that they overlap; powerful psychedelic drugs and powerful anesthetics are nearly the same things, and both surgery, and the ingestion of powerful psychedelic drugs may trigger NDEs.

Most scientists explain away the OBE phenomenon as hallucinations. They do this because they can't explain how one's spirit could be separate from the physical body, if the spirit, scientifically speaking, doesn't exist. But if one accepts the Christian principle that people really do have eternal spirits dwelling inside of physical bodies, then the existence of OBEs shouldn't be so hard to accept.

I've read several books on astral projection, and have even experimented with it myself, without the use of drugs. Though I never fully succeeded, I did experience enough results to be convinced that it is a real phenomenon. More often than not, my experiences were terrifying; often I sensed and even saw entities in my presence that... *startled...me. (Recall that I fiddled with a host of different things before I became a Christian.)*

I must be honest; astral projection makes me curious, even now that I'm a Christian. If I were to separate from my physical body, I would be able to fly, pass through solid matter, travel to the depths of the oceans, and even outer space. I would be able to seek out whatever information I desired, such as government secrets, (*undetected*), or even prophetic visions of God, heaven, angels, and the like, (*possibly*). But, I have a strange foreboding feeling that if this ability were attained by my own merit – i.e., if I followed the prescribed formats in astral projection *How To* books, it wouldn't

be without a price.

While in spiritual form, astral projectors claim to be capable of passing through solid matter, traveling to the depths of the oceans, going into outer space to other planets – even seeking out other intelligent life there, and other dimensions as well.

The idea of having the ability of astral projection has intrigued me to such a degree that I even wrote a fiction novel based upon it. This novel is titled *Apparition*, and explores a character named Simon, who *thinks* he is a Christian.<sup>4</sup> (*He eventually becomes one.*) The phenomenon of astral projection opens his eyes to the world beyond the veil, which surrounds us all. While this is purely a work of fiction, I used several real case studies for inspiration, and cover many issues that a person in this situation might be faced with. *And in case you're wondering – good conquers evil!*

### 3. Demonic deception:

While I admit to having curiosity about the phenomenon of astral projection, it is clear to me that a great deal of demonic deception can come about from an experience with this phenomenon. From this one activity, sorcery, necromancy, channeling, and the like, can be developed. For example, it isn't uncommon for practitioners of astral projection to encounter and communicate with the deceased – or at least those they perceive to be the deceased.<sup>6</sup> Necromancy involves interactively seeking out communication with the dead; channeling also involves communicating with the dead. (*Actually, most of this communication is more in likely with demons posing as deceased relatives, rather than the actual deceased relatives themselves – but in all cases, necromancy and channeling are sin.*)

Those who've experienced astral projection also often report enhanced psychic abilities afterward. The attainment of these psychic abilities originate either because astral projection unlocks certain aspects of humanity that make people more spiritually inclined, or it makes people more susceptible to demonic possession – and their newly attained psychic abilities are attributed to these demons, (*or both*). In any case, I don't think it's any accident that God has placed a veil upon the eyes of humanity – probably more for humanities protection than anything else. Concerning the susceptibility of demonic influences and supernatural activities, please refer to the warnings I give in the chapter on PSI.

Because astral projection is so intertwined in things such as sorcery, and necromancy – things strictly forbidden in scripture – I currently view this activity as *primarily* satanic. I would also warn anyone reading books on this subject to not believe *any* of the philosophical and religious dogma the usual practitioners of astral projection purport. Of all the astral projection books I've read, none of them were written by Christian authors. Furthermore, in these books, Christianity is nine out of ten times cast in the light of deception, and eastern mysticism is almost *always* elevated.

### 4. The implications of astral projection:

If astral projection is in fact a real phenomenon, then its implications are far reaching. Relative to the events in Genesis 11:1-9, the Tower of Babel could have actually been a temple for religious activities. Such activities were probably deeply

rooted in idolatry, and involved sorcery, which frequently includes the use of psychedelic drugs. By using drugs, these people may have discovered and perfected the art of astral projection. Since the spirit body doesn't need to breathe, and isn't hindered by physical limitations, they may have been able to extend their awareness not only into our solar system, but beyond, into *the heavens*, as Genesis 11:1-9 may suggest. If this is true, then the Tower of Babel was a temple that did indeed reach into the heavens. These people may have found other worlds, where they would have had access to enormous amounts of knowledge, spiritual, and scientific.

Being in spiritual form, it's likely they weren't even detected by some of the species of the other worlds they may have found. With this in consideration, they may have had free rein to wander about, observing and discovering the technology found in other worlds. Since all these astral projectors spoke the same language, they may have been able to re-assimilate some of the knowledge that they accumulated from the entities of the other worlds.

Another possibility is the fact that during these expeditions, these people may have encountered and attracted other species from other worlds that *were* aware of their presence. During these encounters, they may have invited these beings from other worlds to come to earth, (whether intentionally, or unintentionally), and initiated an exchange of some sort, i.e., technology for raw materials, or *other things*. They may also have considered these beings to be gods, and desired to worship them.

I realize much of the above is speculation, but if this outer space expedition stuff seems odd, consider for yourself just exactly why NASA exists. Is there not a desire in the heart of humanity to explore the unknown? Doesn't NASA exist to "*...seek out new life, and new civilizations; to boldly go where no man has gone before!*", as actor William Shatner proudly proclaimed, citing the words of author Gene Rodenbury?

## 5. Why did God intervene at the Tower of Babel?

Does scripture substantiate any of the aforementioned? For starters, in Genesis 11:1-9, we see a people that started building a tower that reaches to heaven. We also see a people whose accumulation of knowledge is so great, that God intervenes, and destroys the civilization by destroying its language. Whatever the knowledge was that these people had obtained, it had to be powerful enough for them to develop *whatever they imagined*, because *nothing could be kept from them*. Such knowledge is comparable to the advent of the computer, which enables the accumulation of knowledge exponentially. This knowledge had to drastically upset the natural balance between man's spiritual and technological development.

In essence, man's pride was an issue in God's decision to destroy the civilization of those constructing the Tower of Babel, because pride in a species is an immature, sinful attitude. For a proud species to have access to very powerful, dangerous technology is not good. The continued existence of said species would be endangered. In this respect, the element that distinguished the people that originally constructed the Tower of Babel was not only their pride, but the extent of the knowledge that they attained, which I believe far surpassed simply being able to build structures close to 300 ft. high. The level of knowledge that they achieved had to be so advanced, it would've been analogous to a child playing with a handgun. In order to keep these people from

destroying themselves, or anyone else, God stepped in and scribbled all over their knowledge base; language.

Another reason why God destroyed the civilization of the Tower of Babel should be clearly evident, if in fact these people were in contact with civilizations from other worlds. Consider why God may want to segregate the intelligent species in the universe from each other. The effects their contact may have upon each other could be highly detrimental. A fallen species, for instance, shouldn't be allowed access into the realms of glorified species, because they would most likely corrupt said realms, and the glorified species therein. Fallen species shouldn't be allowed to interact with each other either, because war would be a likely result.

There are two situations in which I could see it being God's will for different intelligent species of the universe to be interacting with each other. The first situation is when glorified species interact with fallen species only to help them – in serving the will of God. This interaction is primarily one way interaction – i.e., the identity of the glorified species is hidden in order to keep a low profile. Star Trek fans refer to this *low profile*, or refusal to openly interact with a species, the *Prime Directive*. Simply put, the Prime Directive states that one species shouldn't interfere with the development of another species. The Prime Directive as defined by author Gene Rodenbury was more anthropologically based, rather than spiritually based. While he asserted that the Prime Directive *strictly forbids* interference no matter what the cost, (as anthropologists studying other cultures assert), the True Prime Directive does not. The True Prime Directive concerns the will of God, because looking at biblical history, it is obvious that God and his angels have intervened in the affairs of humanity time, and time again. This intervention in the development of a species, (man in the cases found in scripture), is always initiated when God deems that it's in the best interest of that species, according to His will.

The discreet nature of angels is exactly what we see when describing known angelic encounters. True angels – faithful to God – never give glory to themselves, and are usually so utterly discrete, they're gone before anyone even questions whether or not they were in the presence of extraordinary beings.<sup>7</sup>

As for other examples in scripture where God and His angels were obviously *not* discreet at all, it was always to demonstrate the power, and glory of God.

The second situation in which it would be God's will for intelligent species in the universe to interact with each other is if these species are glorified species. Being glorified, they are probably allowed to interact with each other, because they acknowledge and submit to God's will. With God Himself guiding them in love, peaceful unity is possible, because *with God, all things are possible!*<sup>8</sup>

The only exception to God allowing fallen species to interact with glorified species that I can find in scripture is the fact that God allowed Satan entrance into the Garden of Eden, where he thus deceived Adam and Eve, and corrupted humanity's realm. (The people of the Tower of Babel may also have corrupted glorified realms, but scripture doesn't substantiate this.)

It should be noted that during this point in time, (*when the Garden of Eden still existed*), when Satan tempted Eve, Satan and the other angels that fell with him were corrupting other realms *against* the will of God. God allowed this to happen for a short time, because God is love, and in being love, He allows the opportunity of evil to exist.

(Without the freedom of choice, what meaning does love have?)

Forbidden interactions, while they are allowed to be initiated against the will of God, are never allowed to continue indefinitely. This is what is meant, when scripture states that *there was war in heaven*.<sup>9</sup> God dealt with Satan following Adam and Eve's fall. God brought about the flood of Noah that destroyed all the aberrations and corruption produced from the Sons of God interacting and inbreeding with the daughters of men. God destroyed the civilization that constructed the Tower of Babel. God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah and other cities round about them because of the sinful interaction that continued between angels and humans. God called Israel, and enabled them to destroy the remainder of the Nephilim giants that still existed after the flood – and the list goes on.

Since God destroyed the civilization that built the Tower of Babel, then it can be assumed that if there was interaction between humanity and beings from other worlds, this interaction was initiated against the will of God. But how can it be proven that these people were in contact with other worlds?

If there is a link between the Tower of Babel and astral projection, and also the possibility of entities from other worlds being involved, is there any mention of this link in scripture? Where's the proof?

#### 6. The link between sorcery and the Tower of Babel:

Further delving into the mystery of the Tower of Babel, it is known that the Tower of Babel is the ancient site and/or capital of Babylon, (modern Hillah), situated on the Euphrates River.<sup>10</sup>

Little is known about the ancient people that built the Tower of Babel, because almost everything from their culture has been destroyed. But since the Babylonians were probably direct descendents of these people that constructed the Tower of Babel, (at least those that stayed there after God confused their language), then studying the Babylonians should reveal information indicating what their ancestors were like.

Did the Babylonians practice astral projection? If so, evidence of this should be indicated through findings linking the Babylonian culture with religious activities, as well as spiritual practices, (*such as sorcery, which probably originated from astral projection*). This is exactly what is discovered following a linguistic and archeological investigation of the Babylonian people.

Concerning a linguistic analysis, searching the Greek terms for sorcery, wizard, witch, and the like, reveals that these terms were used by the Babylonians. The Greek word for sorcery is *mageia*, {mag-i'-ah}, {mageiva} & {magiva}, which also covers the terms of magic, and magic arts. This word is related to another Greek word, *magos*, {mag'-os}, {mavgo"}, which means wise man, or sorcerer. From Strong's Enhanced Lexicon, it should be noted that the Babylonians are listed among the civilizations that used this term.<sup>11</sup>

#### **magos { mag'-os }**

of foreign origin 7248; TDNT – 4:356,547; n m  
AV – wise man 4, sorcerer 2; 6

GK – 3407 { mavgo" }

1) a magus

1a) the name given by the Babylonians (Chaldeans), Medes, Persians, and others, to the wise men, teachers, priests, physicians, astrologers, seers, interpreters of dreams, augers, soothsayers, sorcerers etc.

1b) the oriental wise men (astrologers) who, having discovered by the rising of a remarkable star that the Messiah had just been born, came to Jerusalem to worship him

1c) a false prophet and sorcerer

From this information, the conclusion can be derived that the Babylonians were involved with sorcery. The term magus is found in the Babylonian culture, and is associated with all forms of knowledge, spiritual, and scientific. Scripture also validates the link between the Babylonians and spiritual knowledge and practices, ( *sorcery*), in many verses found throughout the book of Daniel.

Moving on to the archeological investigation, when analyzing the archeological remnants of the Babylonian people, it's obvious that they were highly religious. The area surrounding the Tower of Babel is cluttered with various religious temples. In fact, right next to the Tower of Babel is the temple of Marduk, which was the center of Babylon's religious life. According to the writings of the ancient Greek historian Herodotus, this temple once contained a gold sculpture of its so-called god that weighed no less than 22 tons.<sup>12</sup>

Since the Tower of Babel eventually became the center of the Babylonian Empire, it shouldn't be too unreasonable to assume that the spiritual knowledge the Babylonians contained began with their ancestors who built the Tower of Babel. Also, seeing that the Babylonian people were highly religious, it can further be assumed from archeological evidence that the builders of the Tower of Babel were also highly religious people.

Carrying the archeological analysis into a global perspective, it is widely known that most ancient civilizations have been discovered throughout the world to have an enormous interest in the stars. This leads me to my next query. Why were ancient civilizations so preoccupied with so many various forms of astrology?

## 7. An enormous interest in the stars:

Concerning the knowledge of the pre-Babylonians, I mentioned previously that for the most part, it was lost when God destroyed their language. Was it lost entirely? Of course not; we see remnants of this technology all around the world. The technology of astronomy, (*imbedded within astrology*), in particular, is displayed in the monuments of the pyramids of ancient Egypt, Stone Henge in England, the Inca and Myan pyramids in Central and South America, pyramids in Australia, the Zodiac of Greece, and on the list goes.<sup>13</sup> An interesting note about astrology is the fact that intertwined with scientific knowledge is also the worship of deities with which these ancient civilizations attributed to celestial bodies. I find it no coincidence that this link exists; a link suggesting that there are powerful beings associated with celestial spheres in outer space. Even more intriguing is the recent, well-famed pyramids, and face – seen on Mars, which I discussed in the chapter about the realms of heaven.<sup>14</sup> Indeed, the people of earth are slowly opening their eyes. Hopefully Christians are opening their eyes as well – so the proper

perspective on these entities from other worlds will be publicized!

The knowledge of astrology in particular may have been much more than a curiosity, or simple observations made by the people of ancient times. Perhaps careful consideration was given to mapping the solar system, because these maps were actually used on astral expeditions. Consider how wide-spread, and highly advanced the astronomical knowledge imbedded within astrology has been discovered – in nearly every ancient culture of the world.

#### 8. Meeting places of the *gods*:

The Tower of Babel wasn't the only tower built during the earliest civilizations of mankind. The ancient Sumerians, Elamites, Assyrians, Babylonians, Kassites, and Persians all built towers like the Tower of Babel. In most cases, these towers, also known as ziggurats, were considered to be holy temples into which the *gods* were believed to step down to an earthly dwelling place. In the prolific city-states of Mesopotamia alone, some 30 known ziggurats dating to between 3000 and 500 BC. have been found.<sup>15</sup>

Could it be that the ancient legends of the peoples of these times were true, just as I've been proposing? Perhaps these were monuments these ancient civilizations created as meeting places where they encountered entities from other worlds; entities that simply stepped in and assumed the identities of the gods with which these civilizations worshipped.

Does any of this sound familiar to anything I've discussed in previous chapters? Consider the following scenario: Eons ago, a wealthy, powerful, highly religious civilization, built a large monument to honor some particular idol. During their ritualistic festivities, these people discovered an unusual side effect of the drugs they were taking during their rituals. This side effect, *astral projection*, over time, was incorporated into their practices. Eventually, these people perfected this phenomenon, and began exploring the galaxy.

During some of the explorations, these people attracted the attention of powerful angelic entities dwelling in the depths of the cosmos. After much careful consideration and planning, some of these observing angels contrived a plan. "If we go down there and show off a few tricks, etc., we can easily assume the identity of their *gods*. We could literally possess kingdoms!" While some angels vehemently objected, others quietly pondered the temptation, thinking that '*God would never give them their own personal kingdom*'. Eventually, those that liked the plan congregated, and conducted their plan accordingly.

In a personal quest to fulfill their sinful desires, these angels decided to leave their first estate, and appeared to the civilization that constructed the Tower of Babel, (*possibly among others*). For a time, they proceeded to indulge themselves in the wealth of their *worshippers*. Among these indulgences was the fulfillment of sexual union, with whomever they desired. (*Sound familiar yet?*) The book of Genesis, chapter 6 asserts that sexual union between the Sons of God occurred before, and after the flood. Also, information found in the ancient writings of the Greek historian Herodotus asserts the same activity.



*“At the summit of the Tower of Babel, Herodotus wrote, ‘stands a great temple with a fine large couch in it, richly covered, and a golden table beside it. The shrine contains no image and no one spends the night there except a Babylonian woman, all alone, whoever it may be that the god has chosen. The god then enters the temple in person and takes his rest upon the bed.’”<sup>16</sup>*

Here, while it is highly likely that this is an example of religious perversion among the high priests of the Babylonian religion, I find it probable that this may also be an example of sexual union between the Sons of God, and the daughter’s of men. My personal opinion is that these ritualistic sexual encounters may have begun with the Sons of God. Later, when the high priests of this religious sect found out that they could also assume the identities of these *gods*, or insist that they were given the authority to perform such practices – and could get away with it, they then also partook of this activity. (*Lots of conjecture here – I admit it – but at least not without any basis*).

Since there were so many ziggurats, and many of them may have been locations where said satanic activity may have taken place, why didn’t God destroy them all? Exactly what was it about the Tower of Babel that made it any different from any of these other towers? Why does scripture point out the advancement of the people of the Tower of Babel in particular?

Concerning the scenario I just previously gave, I find it to be a likely explanation that describes the mystery that enshrouds the Tower of Babel. While I indicate in my scenario that it was humanity that initiated first contact with beings from other worlds, this may not necessarily be the case. Genesis 6 (*the days of Noah*) obviously precedes Genesis 11 (*the days of the Tower of Babel*), so we can see that the Sons of God, (*fallen angels*), were involved in the affairs of humanity before the Tower of Babel ever came about. In any case, what makes the Tower of Babel unique, in my opinion, is that it was a *gateway* that operated in two directions: Species from other worlds came to earth, and humans from earth, likewise, traveled to other worlds.

### 8.1 The Babylonian translation of the Tower of Babel – “Gateway of God”:

While there were many ziggurats built, archeological evidence suggests that the Tower of Babel was preeminent in its time, being the most illustrious, and probably the biggest of all. This tower in particular may be the oldest ziggurat as well, and was probably the precursor for all the others that followed.

Being the oldest ziggurat, it’s likely that the knowledge obtained by its builders, the pre-Babylonians, may have even been more advanced than their predecessors. This would make sense, because it would explain why God divided only this one civilization, and not those that followed.

The art of astral projection, and all the knowledge that proceeded from this spiritual technique, was primarily lost with the pre-Babylonians. Only bits and pieces of this knowledge survived God’s destruction of the pre-Babylonian civilization, and these fragments ended up scattered throughout different civilizations all over the world.

Some of this knowledge was passed on to the Babylonians. Also, I think it’s obvious the Egyptians were able to reconstruct a lion’s share of this knowledge, due to the vast complexity of their mathematics, architectural genius, astronomical knowledge,

and especially their spiritual knowledge. In the book of Exodus, scripture states that the Egyptian sorcerers were able to replicate three of the miracles God produced through Moses. Exactly how did they do this?

But as advanced as the Babylonians, the Egyptians, and others might have been, the only civilization that was ever destroyed because of their advancement was the civilization that built the Tower of Babel. Why? What was it this civilization had that made it so powerfully knowledgeable?

The capstone supporting the theory that astral projection may have been discovered and practiced at the Tower of Babel is the actual name, “Babel”. The biblical interpretation of this name connects Babel with the Hebrew verb *Balal*, which means, ‘to confuse’. But the actual Babylonian translation of the name “Babel” comes from the Babylonian word *Bab-ili*, which means “Gate of God”.<sup>17</sup>

Consider the word, “Gate”. Of all the names this tower may have had, it was given the name, “Gate of God”. This, combined with the Bible’s description of a people that reached unto the heavens, provides enough clues to indicate two things: The Tower of Babel may have been a place where people astrally projected themselves into the heavens – seeking out life in the heavens. The Tower of Babel may also have been a place where entities from other worlds, namely the Sons of God referred to in Genesis 6, entered into the earth.

## 9. Is astral projection evil?

While I have asserted that it’s my opinion that astral projection is *primarily* satanic – because it is so closely related to other spiritual practices in scripture that are strictly forbidden, I’m not claiming that it is *completely* evil. In and of itself, it may not be evil.

For example, some people report experiences with this phenomenon, in which it simply happens to them – and they did nothing to intentionally induce it. While most of these experiences are in conjunction with NDEs during fatal accidents, or surgery, some people have reported that it just happened to them, and there was apparently no trigger at all. Author of *Journey’s Out of the Body*, Robert Monroe, for instance, claims that his out-of-body-experiences simply started happening to him in the middle of the night. On one occasion, he got out of bed to go to the bathroom only to discover that his hand passed through the doorknob; his physical body was still laying on his bed.<sup>18</sup>

If this phenomenon simply happens to people, how could it be considered satanic? How could Robert help what was happening to him?

When this phenomenon happens to non-Christians, in most of the cases that I’ve read, they usually develop a belief system based upon this experience. Their concept of death changes – because being apart from their physical body and still being aware proves to them that there is in fact an existence separate from the physical realm. Unfortunately, their concept of the afterlife usually discredits the God of scripture. For instance, the doctrine of personal salvation is almost always absent when reading the philosophies purported by astral projectors. It is usually replaced by the concept of an all loving, all forgiving God that wouldn’t possibly do any harm to *anyone*. This is a great deception, because to say that there is no judgement is to indicate that there is no justice, and God is definitely a God of divine justice.

Is it possible to be a Christian, and have an out-of-body-experience? Charismatic pastor and author Benny Hinn reported such an experience. In fact, according to his personal testimony, preceding an out-of-body-experience, he was under a satanic attack. This attack was immediately terminated when suddenly several angels burst into his bedroom and dispatched with the demonic entity. During the battle, Benny Hinn claims to have been spiritually torn from his physical body and flung across his bedroom. While outside of his physical body, he even heard and saw one of the angels calling another one by the name, “Michael”. Benny Hinn assumes the angel Michael must have been the archangel Michael spoken of in scripture. To this day, Benny Hinn still affirms this experience, despite the harsh criticism he’s received; many consider his story to be a tall tale of epic proportions.<sup>19</sup>

In chapter eight of this book, I discussed the topic of bilocation, because of its relevance to thought-forms. Bilocation is also relative to astral projection; in fact, bilocation and astral projection are essentially the same phenomenon – and both could be special types of thought-forms.

As previously stated in chapter eight of this book, many Christian saints and monks were famous for bilocation, such as St. Anthony of Paudua, St. Ambrose of Milan, St. Severus of Ravenna, St. Alphonsus Maria de’Ligouri, and Padre Pio of Italy. In 1774 St. Alphonsus Maria de’Ligouri was seen at the bedside of the dying Pope Clement XIV, when in fact the saint was confined to his cell in a location four days’ journey away.<sup>20</sup>

There may also be examples in scripture of God’s prophets experiencing astral projection. John’s trip to the 3<sup>rd</sup> heaven may have been a spiritual journey, in which his physical body was left behind. While the apostle Paul states in 2 Corinthians 2:12 that he wasn’t sure whether or not John was in his body or not, John is fairly clear about it; *he was in the spirit*.

## 2 Corinthians 2:12

<sup>2</sup>*I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, (whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) such an one caught up to the third heaven. <sup>3</sup>And I knew such a man, (whether in the body, or out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) <sup>4</sup>How that he was caught up into paradise, and heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful for a man to utter.*

## Revelation 1:9-11

<sup>9</sup>*I John, who also am your brother, and companion in tribulation, and in the kingdom and patience of Jesus Christ, was in the isle that is called Patmos, for the word of God, and for the testimony of Jesus Christ. <sup>10</sup>I was in the Spirit on the Lord’s day, and heard behind me a great voice, as of a trumpet, <sup>11</sup>Saying, I am Alpha and Omega, the first and the last: and, What thou seest, write in a book, and send it unto the seven churches which are in Asia; unto Ephesus, and unto Smyrna, and unto Pergamos, and unto Thyatira, and unto Sardis, and unto Philadelphia, and unto Laodicea.*

Relative to John’s vision, it might be likely that many of the visions received by the prophets of old were given to these prophets while they were spiritually separated from their physical bodies.

It has probably come to mind to those readers that know scripture that according to James 2:6, the body without the spirit is dead. Does this mean that astral projection is impossible without dying? I don’t think so. It’s because of James 2:6 that I think that only a part of the spirit actually leaves the physical body. The spirit probably must remain connected, at least to some degree, to its physical counterpart, else, the physical body might die. One item that might bare relevance to this *connection* is the fact that

those who claim to be able to astrally project often report seeing a *silver cord* that attaches their spirit to their physical body.

It's true that James 2:6 might be alluding to a usual scenario – i.e., *the body without the spirit is – usually – dead*, but there may be a deeper meaning.

I won't rule out the possibility that astral projection could be a spiritual gift endowed by God. In 1 Corinthians 12:4-11, a host of different gifts are listed. Astral projection may be a type of miraculous power, by which the Holy Spirit imparts special knowledge.

### 1 Corinthians 12:4-11

*<sup>4</sup>Now there are diversities of gifts, but the same Spirit. <sup>5</sup>And there are differences of administrations, but the same Lord. <sup>6</sup>And there are diversities of operations, but it is the same God which worketh all in all. <sup>7</sup>But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal. <sup>8</sup>For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom; to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit; <sup>9</sup>To another faith by the same Spirit; to another the gifts of healing by the same Spirit; <sup>10</sup>To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another divers kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues: <sup>11</sup>But all these worketh that one and the selfsame Spirit, dividing to every man severally as he will.*

Because of all of the above information concerning Christians, saints, monks, prophets, and apostles possibly having experiences with astral projection, I refuse to label it completely satanic without question. This phenomenon is enshrouded in the occult... true, but it may simply be a spiritual phenomenon that is *usually* demonically perverted, or originates from a demonic source. In any case – as a general rule, I'd consider it wise not to try and produce this phenomenon; i.e., *don't seek it out*. But if it happens naturally without provocation – such as a side effect from an NDE, or even spontaneous projections while falling asleep at night, then I'll leave some room for interpretation. Before I leave this chapter, I have some advice to offer anyone dealing with spontaneous projections.

### 10. NDEs – a type of astral projection:

Earlier in this chapter, I mentioned that astral projection sometimes occurs in conjunction with NDEs, but I didn't elaborate much about this fact. NDEs (Near-Death-Experiences) are nearly the same phenomenon as OBEs (Out-of-Body-Experiences), because both include the spiritual separation from the physical body. Concerning NDEs, many Christians have reported this experience. In fact, some individuals were not Christians before their experience, but afterward became Christians because of what they experienced. In his book, *Why I Believe*, Dr. D. James Kennedy elaborates on several case studies where people have died, and traveled both to heaven, and hell. In one case, an individual reported falling into the depths of hell; he was so shaken by this experience that when he returned, he became a minister.<sup>21</sup>

If you, the reader, have heard of a book titled *Guided by the Light*,<sup>22</sup> it discusses its author's claimed NDE experience. Like so many books dealing with NDEs, astral projection, and the like, it's filled with deception. The "Jesus" in Betty Eadie's so-called vision claims validity to all the religions of the world, which is a far cry from what Jesus says in scripture: "I am the WAY, the TRUTH, and the LIFE. There is no way to the Father except by Me."<sup>23</sup> Furthermore, another book titled *Deceived by the Light*,<sup>24</sup> was

written for the specific purpose to discredit Betty Eadie's experience as accounted in *Guided by the Light*. Many of the details she claims in her book were investigated, and discovered to be completely contrived. It is also known that before her so-called experience, she attended several group sessions with people that have had NDEs. During these sessions, she was able to compile and document these experiences in order to inspire her to write her own.

#### 11. Possible dangers involved with astral projection:

Since astral projection places people in situations where it is revealed to them that there is a spiritual reality beyond the physical realm, many people don't have any scriptural foundation with which to catalogue their experience. Without any foundation, these people become highly susceptible to the deception that comes when they encounter demonic entities.

Demonic entities, often appearing as angels of light – among other things, i.e., deceased relatives, in their own unique ways, often fill the hearts and minds of these spiritual travelers with deception. That's why it's so common to find a vast amount of deception in literature written by those who claim to be able to astrally project.

Entities encountered on astral expeditions may not only deceive with their words, but also might be able to impart spiritual impurities. I only say this because being spiritually separated from the physical body is not a natural state. The laws governing such a state are unknown. To assume that the realm of the spirit contains no spiritually damaging elements is an unwise assumption. Knowing that there are so many things that cause the physical body harm – even things such as viruses and bacteria which can't be seen with the naked eye, it makes me think that similar elements of danger may exist in the spiritual realm. Consider that individuals spiritually separated from their physical bodies can encounter demonic entities, and communicate with, and even touch them. What effects might these encounters have?

It may also be the case that while in spiritual form, separated from one's physical body, that a person becomes highly susceptible to demonic possession. The aspect that there may be a physical body primarily uninhabited by a spirit – but alive – (*especially the unprotected body of someone who isn't a Christian*) – may be very appealing to demonic entities searching for a host.

Robert Monroe, in his accounts in *Journey's Out of the Body*, recites one time that when he returned to his physical body after an astral expedition, discovered it walking about, and performing rudimentary tasks.<sup>25</sup> Exactly how was this possible, if his spirit was elsewhere?

People seeking out to attain the ability to astrally project might open themselves up to an incredible amount of danger. This is the primary reason that I think it's a bad idea to try and seek out this ability.

Now if ability is a gift from God – then it doesn't need to be sought out. Furthermore, if God provides this ability as a gift to someone, then I think God would bestow with it all the protections afforded. Why would He give one of His children something that could gravely injure them? That would be like a father giving his son a pistol, and saying, "Okay son, go outside and play with your new toy now".

The major question up for debate is, if someone has the ability to astrally project,

what is the source of it? Is it from God, or the devil?

#### 12. Advice: What I would do if this happened to me!

If this odd phenomenon were to happen to me, I might consider it a spiritual gift – but would remain exceptionally cautious. I'd seek out godly counsel, and request a multitude of prayer before divulging into it. If after praying – prayers in which I would ask God to take this ability away from me if it wasn't from Him – I still had this ability, I might then investigate what God would want me to do with it. Surely if He gave it to me, He'd let me know what He wanted me to do with it. I think it's all as simple as that, and I would suggest the same for anyone else in a similar situation.

#### 13. Uncorrupted spiritual knowledge in the ancient east:

Concerning spiritual knowledge and psychic abilities in general, it should be noted that not all of the knowledge obtained by the Babylonians – some of which probably originated with the civilization that created the Tower of Babel – may have been corrupt. While *astrology* is deemed evil by scripture because it falls under the umbrella of divination, the oriental wise men (astrologers) known as *The Three Wise Men* (debatable as to whether there were actually three or not), were able to discern that the Messiah had just been born. Their knowledge of this was so certain, they were compelled to travel all the way to Jerusalem to worship Jesus. This knowledge was obviously a good thing; it was knowledge ordained by God Himself to serve as a testimony of Christ, our Lord and Savior. I think this uncorrupted astrology, (the prediction of a unique star foretelling the birth of the Messiah), was not really astrology, but rather prophecy left behind from the prophet Daniel, when he was held captive in Babylon. The oriental wise men in scripture would probably more accurately be described as prophets, or sages, rather than astrologers, because scripture condemns astrology.

Reading from the book of Daniel, we find that because the prophet Daniel was found favorable in the eyes of the Babylonians, he was taken as a captive into Babylon while in his youth.

#### Daniel 1:3-4

<sup>3</sup>And the king spake unto Ashpenaz the master of his eunuchs, that he should bring certain of the children of Israel, and of the king's seed, and of the princes; <sup>4</sup>Children in whom was no blemish, but well favoured, and skilful in all wisdom, and cunning in knowledge, and understanding science, and such as had ability in them to stand in the king's palace, and whom they might teach the learning and the tongue of the Chaldeans.

When he was taken into Babylon, he was taught in the knowledge of the Babylonians, and instantly spotted the demonic deceptions intertwined in their culture, and technology. Daniel and his three Hebrew friends were unique though, because God gave them the spiritual gift of wisdom and knowledge.

#### Daniel 1:17

<sup>17</sup>As for these four children, God gave them knowledge and skill in all learning and wisdom: and Daniel had understanding in all visions and dreams.

If Daniel was taught any spiritual knowledge by the Babylonians, those things condemned by God he certainly would've avoided. But I won't rule out the possibility that if there is anything neutral about spiritual abilities at all, Daniel could've learned their spiritual practices, and focused them on God, because of his faith in God. In this manner, Daniel could've learned spiritual things that are *almost always* demonically perverted, but because of his pure motives, and heart for God, the Lord blessed him. All that he learned was thus uncorrupted, because God was working within him. Daniel's spiritual experiences were thus *Visions given by God*, instead of necromancy or channeling, and he is known as *A prophet of God*, instead of an astrologer, diviner, wizard, sorcerer, witch, etc.

For a person nowadays to be a Christian, and gifted in spiritual abilities, I would thus make a similar conclusion. Magicians perform magic for money, and the glory they receive from their audiences. Mediums, witches, and others delving into occult related practices do so for money, power, personal glory, personal gain, or other selfish motives. Also, most people involved in supernatural occult practices are either demon possessed, or manipulated by demonic entities. (*More on this in the chapter on PSI.*)

God's gifted children, on the other hand, may very well be doing many activities that appear similar to occult related activities, i.e., doing things requiring supernatural power, but they never charge a fee, and always give glory to God, (*Creator of all things, as known in the Bible*). Likewise, all true Christians are possessed and guided by the Holy Spirit.

Another distinction between spiritual abilities coming from God, and those that come from demonic entities, is the accuracy, and power involved. Concerning foretelling the future, prophesy is 100% accurate, as opposed to the hit/miss ratings of the many techniques used by occultists, (palmistry, astrology, tarot cards, tea leaves, users of Ouija boards, etc.).

Scripture gives many indicators on how to tell if someone is really a true prophet or not. Consider the following verses:

#### Deuteronomy 13:1-4

<sup>1</sup>If there arise among you a prophet, or a dreamer of dreams, and giveth thee a sign or a wonder, <sup>2</sup>And the sign or the wonder come to pass, whereof he spake unto thee, saying, Let us go after other gods, which thou hast not known, and let us serve them; <sup>3</sup>Thou shalt not hearken unto the words of that prophet, or that dreamer of dreams: for the LORD your God proveth you, to know whether ye love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul. <sup>4</sup>Ye shall walk after the LORD your God, and fear him, and keep his commandments, and obey his voice, and ye shall serve him, and cleave unto him.

#### Deuteronomy 18:20-22

<sup>20</sup>But the prophet, which shall presume to speak a word in my name, which I have not commanded him to speak, or that shall speak in the name of other gods, even that prophet shall die. <sup>21</sup>And if thou say in thine heart, How shall we know the word which the LORD hath not spoken? <sup>22</sup>When a prophet speaketh in the name of the LORD, if the thing follow not, nor come to pass, that is the thing which the LORD hath not spoken, but the prophet hath spoken it presumptuously: thou shalt not be afraid of him.

#### 1 John 4:1-4

<sup>1</sup>Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets are gone out into the world. <sup>2</sup>Hereby know ye the Spirit of God: Every spirit that confesseth that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is of God: <sup>3</sup>And every spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God: and this is that spirit of antichrist, whereof ye have heard that it should come; and even now already is it in the world.

According to these scriptures, there are essentially two tests for prophets. First of all, if they don't have any divine ability to back up what they're saying, i.e., they prophecy things that *don't* come to pass as they say, then they are clearly not from God. Secondly, even if they do exercise a certain degree of accuracy in foretelling future events, but their doctrine they preach is false, then again, they are clearly false prophets. Two examples of false doctrine are given in scripture. 1. That Jesus Christ is come in the flesh – not of God, and 2. Any word spoken in the name of other gods. For more examples – pick up practically any book from the New Age section, and browse the gambit of philosophical belief systems that describe the number of ways people can go about perfecting themselves, and essentially becoming *gods*.

Psychics frequently fail test #1, and attribute their misses to fluctuations in the earth's geo-electrical magnetic field, or other excuses. Prophets, on the other hand, need no excuses for being wrong, because they are never wrong. The distinction between a true prophet, and one who claims to have the gift of prophesy but actually doesn't, was a fatal distinction in Daniel's time, because King Nebuchadnezzar didn't accept any excuses for being wrong. If they were wrong about their prophetic abilities, then they were lying to him – the King, and were thus ordered to be executed.

As for other miracles, God's gifted children may often produce the same type of miracles that can be produced by those who are empowered with demonic power. The difference, however, is always evident by the unmatched power, and magnitude of the miracles produced by God's chosen. Moreover, the miracles produced by God's gifted children are always produced in order to give glory to God, and serve His purposes. Miracles produced by those that aren't God's gifted children are always motivated for reasons other than to give God glory, and to serve His purposes.

Moses is a prime example of this. Moses, like Daniel, was taught in the wisdom and knowledge of the Egyptians, (his captors, as the Babylonians were Daniel's captors), but God was working within Moses, and this is evident in all the miracles God worked through him.

The magician's of Egypt were able to make their staffs turn into serpents, but Moses' staff turned into a serpent that ate theirs. The magician's of Pharaoh also were able to make vessels of water turn into blood, and summon frogs. But Moses made the entire Nile River turn into blood, and he likewise summoned millions of frogs, which the magicians couldn't make go away. Once Moses brought the fourth plague, the plague of turning the dust of the land into lice, the magicians of Egypt finally realized that they weren't dealing with another magician, but rather, someone empowered by God Himself. They simply couldn't replicate the fourth plague. The remaining six plagues Moses brought upon Egypt none of the magicians were able to replicate either, thus, Moses' power was authenticated as God's power, completely unmatched.

As for the purposes of all the miracles God worked through Moses, they all were produced for the distinct purpose of giving glory to God, and serving His purpose of freeing Israel from the Egyptian bondage of slavery.

#### 14. A return to ancient knowledge – how long will the veil be sustained?

Mankind is reaching unto the heavens...once again. I don't think it will be very



long from now before **open** contact is reinitiated between beings from other worlds, and humanity. (*Closed contact has probably already been initiated.*) In fact, I'd be rather surprised if this event doesn't occur in my lifetime – assuming I die of old age.

Currently, commercial investment is fast outpacing the Department of Defense in space technology. Space industry revenues are expected to exceed \$100 billion by 2000, according to the *State of the Space Industry, 1997 Outlook*.<sup>26</sup> With the private sector squeezing into areas which were recently reserved only for military defense, civilians not bound by military contracts will have free reign to report all that they see going on in the space surrounding the earth. (*Being in the Air Force National Guard, I have a glimpse at what they're hiding*).

Concerning commercial industry's trek into space, the big cry of the U.S. DoD is "National Security!" But the economic clout and political power of the private sector can no longer be restrained.

Coupled with physically reaching out into the stars with space technology, I also see the ancient knowledge of astral projection coming alive again within the New Age movement, and in other places. Other places? Yes – other places. Consider that if astral projection truly exists, wouldn't the government would most likely have its hands in it? Well, it does. Just think of the potential for espionage!

During the Gulf War, a number of individuals were employed by the CIA that were specifically trained, and used to plot targets.<sup>27</sup> These individuals used a technique called "Remote Viewing", which is nothing more than a *shareware* version of astral projection. (*When I say shareware, I mean that remote viewing is basically the same thing as astral projection – but individuals don't necessary perceive themselves as completely separated from their physical bodies.*)

Remote viewing has a recorded history in military affairs. Anyone wishing to do research in this area could not only find books on it, but training packages as well. The last time I checked on the Internet doing a search for "Remote Viewing", I found a web site dedicated to it, which contained books, and training packages. The author of the web site I found, who was also the author of the remote viewing training packages, claimed to be one of the employees who used remote viewing during the Gulf War. I consider this individual a credible source of information, because the content I found on his web site paralleled information I saw in a documentary on TLC – dedicated to the subject of remote viewing. Remote viewing was also given a segment on another show called Sightings, which provided much of the same information.

Viewing the world in its current perspective, humanity is reaching out – both nations – powerful economic entities independent of nations, and individuals. We are reaching out, both physically, and spiritually. More eyes are going into more places; how long will the veil be sustained?

## References

- 1 Readers Digest, *The World's Last Mysteries*, Pleasantville, New York, Montreal, 1979, page 177.
- 2 Rosemary Ellen Guiley, *Harper's Encyclopedia of Mystical & Paranormal Experience*, HarperSanFrancisco, San Francisco, 1991, pages 34, 419-423
- 3 Ibid. (2)
- 4 Dr Karl Jansen, *Ketamine and Quantum Psychiatry*,  
[http://www.lycaeum.org/drugs/Cyclohexamines/Ketamine/Ketamine\\_Quantum.html](http://www.lycaeum.org/drugs/Cyclohexamines/Ketamine/Ketamine_Quantum.html), 16 July, 1999.
- 5 John W. Milor, *Apparition*, <http://www.xlibris.com/apparition.html>, 1999.
- 6 William Buhlman, *Adventures Beyond the Body: How to Experience Out-of-Body Travel*, HarperSanFrancisco, New York, NY., 1996.
- 7 Sophy Burnham, *A Book on Angels*, Ballantine Books, New York, NY., 1990.
- 8 Matthew 19:26, Mark 10:27, John 1:2.
- 9 Revelation 12:7.
- 10 Ibid. (1), pages 169-179.
- 11 *Enhanced Strong's Lexicon*, (Oak Harbor, WA: Logos Research Systems, Inc.) 1995.
- 12 Ibid. (1), pages 169-179.
- 13 Ibid. (1), pages 108-203.
- 14 Malin Space Science Systems, <http://barsoom.msss.com/education/facepage/face.html>,  
*The "Face on Mars"*, 1995.
- 15 Ibid. (1), pages 169-179.
- 16 Ibid. (1), pages 169-179.
- 17 Ibid. (1), page 176.
- 18 Robert Monrow, *Journey's Out of the Body*, Main Street books, 1 March, 1973.
- 19 Benny Hinn, *Good Morning, Holy Spirit*, Thomas Nelson, May 1997.

20 Ibid. (2), page 57.

21 D. James Kennedy, *Why I Believe*, Word Books Publisher, Waco TX. 1980, pages 70-80.

22 Betty J. Eadie and C Taylor, *Embraced by the Light*, Bantam Books, October 1994.

23 John 14:6.

24 Douglas R. Groothuis, *Deceived by the light*, Harvest House Publishers, Inc., March 1995.

25 Ibid. (18).

26 Government Executive Magazine, *Moving Toward the Space Age*, April 1998.

27 H.E. Puthoff, *CIA – Initiated Remote Viewing Program at Stanford Research Institute*, Institute for Advanced Studies at Austin TX., July 1995.

## CHAPTER 12: PSI IN THE BIBLE

### 1. What does modern science say about PSI?

There are things about the universe in which we live that science has yet to discover. Nobody truly knows what the essence of thoughts are. Scientifically speaking, thoughts consist of chemical electrical discharges in the brain, processing sensory input and output to and from memory. But is this all they are?

If thoughts are some form of energy which science has yet to discover, perhaps they leave imprints in the physical universe in ways yet unknown. And concerning these imprints, perhaps certain people are able to tap into them.

PSI, a term introduced by Thouless and Wiesner (1948), is a general term referring to psychic phenomenon, such as psychokinesis, (*the ability to move objects with the mind*), and ESP, (*the ability to feel or perceive at a distance*). It stems from the terms *psi-kappa* and *psi-gamma*, denoting active and passive PSI, the first subsuming those phenomena such as psychokinesis which appears to involve an effect upon another system, the second covering phenomena such as extrasensory perception, which shows a more receptive aspect.<sup>1</sup>

Studies in PSI continue to allude scientists, because PSI is not, nor is it affected by, the four forces of physics: strong nuclear force, weak nuclear force, gravitational force, or electromagnetic force. It is not subject to the laws of thermodynamics or the law of gravity, it requires no exchange of energy, and it isn't governed by the theory of relativity, which holds that no particle or object can move faster than the speed of light.<sup>2</sup>

Regardless of the lack of physical evidence, PSI is probably a real phenomenon, because of the vast amount of non-physical scientific evidence supporting its existence. PSI, like the wind, can only be seen by those things that it effects.

### 2. PSI – a non-human attribute:

In my opinion, exceptionally powerful PSI abilities, in general, are primarily outside of the scope of human potential. I say this because in scripture, individuals with powerful psychic abilities are either possessed by the Holy Spirit, or by satanic entities. I can find no reference in scripture reciting anyone who had miraculous powers without the aid of either the Holy Spirit, or demonic entities. One passage of scripture describes a man by the name of Simon who had the power to bewitch people, but there is evidence that this power was demonically charged.

Acts 8:4-11

<sup>4</sup>Therefore they that were scattered abroad went every where preaching the word. <sup>5</sup>Then Philip went down to the city of Samaria, and preached Christ unto them. <sup>6</sup>And the people with one accord gave heed unto those things which Philip spake, hearing and seeing the miracles which he did. <sup>7</sup>For unclean spirits, crying with loud voice, came out of many that were possessed with them: and many taken with palsies, and that were lame, were healed. <sup>8</sup>And there was great joy in that city. <sup>9</sup>But there was a certain man, called Simon, which beforetime in the same city used sorcery, and bewitched the people of Samaria, giving out that himself was some great one: <sup>10</sup>To whom they all gave heed, from the least to the greatest, saying, This man is the great power of God. <sup>11</sup>And to him they had regard, because that of long time he had bewitched them with sorceries.

One indicator that Simon's power was demonic is that the people of Samaria were plagued with unclean spirits, and Simon was one who bewitched people in that area, so he was probably responsible for some of it. Another indicator is that Simon was filled with pride, using his powers in an evil manner, and for his own glory. (Even using them for good isn't right, if he's doing it for his own glory.)

Another example of a sorcerer is given in Acts 13:6-11. Again, this sorcerer, who was called Barjesus, was most likely possessed with a devil. He tried to hinder Paul preaching the gospel, and Paul, empowered by the Holy Spirit, cast a curse of blindness upon him.

#### Acts 13:6-11

*<sup>6</sup>And when they had gone through the isle unto Paphos, they found a certain sorcerer, a false prophet, a Jew, whose name was Barjesus: <sup>7</sup>Which was with the deputy of the country, Sergius Paulus, a prudent man; who called for Barnabas and Saul, and desired to hear the word of God. <sup>8</sup>But Elymas the sorcerer (for so is his name by interpretation) withstood them, seeking to turn away the deputy from the faith. <sup>9</sup>Then Saul, (who also is called Paul,) filled with the Holy Ghost, set his eyes on him, <sup>10</sup>And said, O full of all subtilty and all mischief, thou child of the devil, thou enemy of all righteousness, wilt thou not cease to pervert the right ways of the Lord? <sup>11</sup>And now, behold, the hand of the Lord is upon thee, and thou shalt be blind, not seeing the sun for a season. And immediately there fell on him a mist and a darkness; and he went about seeking some to lead him by the hand.*

Both Simon, and Barjesus were mentioned practicing sorcery, which in scripture is described as demonic in nature, hated by God, and strictly forbidden. Below are just a few Bible verses explaining God's opinion about various forms of sorcery.

#### Leviticus 19:26

*<sup>26</sup>Ye shall not eat any thing with the blood: neither shall ye use enchantment, nor observe times.*

#### Deuteronomy 18:9-15

*<sup>9</sup>When thou art come into the land which the LORD thy God giveth thee, thou shalt not learn to do after the abominations of those nations. <sup>10</sup>There shall not be found among you any one that maketh his son or his daughter to pass through the fire, or that useth divination, or an observer of times, or an enchanter, or a witch, <sup>11</sup>Or a charmer, or a consulter with familiar spirits, or a wizard, or a necromancer. <sup>12</sup>For all that do these things are an abomination unto the LORD: and because of these abominations the LORD thy God doth drive them out from before thee. <sup>13</sup>Thou shalt be perfect with the LORD thy God. <sup>14</sup>For these nations, which thou shalt possess, hearkened unto observers of times, and unto diviners: but as for thee, the LORD thy God hath not suffered thee so to do. <sup>15</sup>The LORD thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken;*

#### 2 Kings 17:17-18

*<sup>17</sup>And they caused their sons and their daughters to pass through the fire, and used divination and enchantments, and sold themselves to do evil in the sight of the LORD, to provoke him to anger.*

*<sup>18</sup>Therefore the LORD was very angry with Israel, and removed them out of his sight: there was none left but the tribe of Judah only.*

#### 2 Chronicles 33:6

*<sup>6</sup>And he caused his children to pass through the fire in the valley of the son of Hinnom: also he observed times, and used enchantments, and used witchcraft, and dealt with a familiar spirit, and with wizards: he wrought much evil in the sight of the LORD, to provoke him to anger.*

All of these scriptures demonstrate that God hates sorcery, divination, enchantments, astrology (observing the times), witches, charmers, mediums, necromancy, and wizards. Does this mean that God hates PSI? Not necessarily, because in Deuteronomy 18:15, after God states that he won't tolerate any spiritual *garbage* in

Israel, He then states that He will raise up a prophet for the people to follow. Biblical prophets have always demonstrated PSI abilities of the highest order. The distinguishing characteristic between all of the aforementioned, and God's prophets, is that God's prophets were influenced/empowered by God, while all of the others appear to be influenced/empowered by satanic entities. As for the PSI itself, reading these scriptures gives us the indication that for the most part, it's satanically charged, but sometimes it comes from God – (hence, there were many examples of those performing sorcery related activities, but only ONE prophet of God that the Lord was going to raise up in the land at that time.)

### 3. PSI – can science help?

Are there situations where PSI may be a purely human characteristic, not channeled from either God, or Satan? From scripture, seeing that there are no *clear* cases of individuals imbued with power that wasn't given to them from an outside source, I *still* don't think that it's a good idea to dismiss PSI entirely to a satanic or Holy Spirit related phenomenon. While there is no scripture *directly* supporting PSI as being a purely human characteristic, there likewise is no *direct* scripture supporting the opposite. In light of this, I don't see research in this area as something wrong, provided the test subjects don't exhibit any of the qualities mentioned above – i.e., they aren't sorcerers, witches, or wizards. Furthermore, those that do have supernatural power shouldn't be abusing their abilities in a self-serving manner, doing evil with their abilities, or trying to propagate some knew philosophy or teaching contrary to scripture, etc. For instance, psychics which use their abilities to help the police find missing children are doing a good thing, and their abilities should be investigated. But this research should be conducted with extreme caution, being aware of the scriptural warning signs of demonic influence that enshroud this phenomenon. (Unfortunately, the scientists that would study this phenomenon are probably most likely those that could care less about scriptural warnings.)

Seeing that scripture forbids observing the times doesn't mean that the field of astronomy is demonic – though by definition, astronomy entails an element of a scientific method for *observing the times* – in a manner of speaking. Meteorology for instance, a sub-field of astronomy, enables us to know what the weather is going to be like tomorrow.

Astronomy, unlike astrology, is purely scientific – completely separated from its astrology counterpart. I think the field of astronomy has been a highly beneficial field of study for humanity. Without it, the telecommunications of the world would be painfully hampered due to the fact that there would be no satellites circling the globe. In effect, studies in PSI could also result in similar advancements, provided such studies adhere to purely scientific methods, and remain cautious of demonic manipulation – (again, something unfortunately unlikely).

To illustrate what I mean, astronomy has helped scientists develop hurricane warning detection systems. Astrology, on the other hand, has led husbands and wives into believing it was *time* to leave their spouses, and partake in adulterous relationships – because they took the advice of their astrological advisors. (The *type* of 'observing the times' is clearly distinguished between these two examples. Astronomy in this case is an

undiluted field of study, while astrology is a demonically manipulated activity.)

A great deal of discernment as to where the source of a particular phenomenon, or doctrine, is coming from can be judged by the fruit of its results. This should be taken into account when choosing PSI test subjects for scientific analysis. Science isn't the all wise oracle some purport it to be. Evolution is one such study in science, (a theory of origin contrary to scripture), that has not successfully avoided demonic manipulation. From evolution, we see the fruit of the holocaust, which cost millions of lives in an attempted genocide. Why? Adolph Hitler believed in the survival of the fittest, and that Germany, being the master race, should dominate the world. Hopefully studies in PSI and other paranormal phenomenon wouldn't lead science into deception the way evolution has.

#### 4. PSI – a human attribute – back before the fall:

In closing, I would like to illuminate the fact that humans may very well have been imbued with PSI abilities when they were originally created by God. Scripture does state in Genesis 1:31 that when God made all things, all the things He made were *very good*. (This might be an *indirect* reference to PSI being a purely human characteristic that I alluded to earlier, when I stated that scripture doesn't indicate *directly* that humans have PSI.) But how exactly can Genesis 1:31 indicate indirectly that people may have been created with PSI abilities?

Stating that humans were once *very good* in their creation, (I'll say perfect, because they were immortal, and without sin), I would like to point out the fact that humans now only use about 10% of their brains. This makes me wonder if humans were ever able to use more of their brains. Wouldn't it be odd if they weren't able to? Why would God create such a large brain, only to give us 10% of it? And if we were able to use more of our brain, what would that entail? Perhaps all that gray-matter we have in our heads was at one time in human history operating with 100% peak capacity.

Is there any indication in scripture that Adam and Eve might have been telepathic? Well, ever wonder exactly how Eve was able to have a dialogue with a serpent in Genesis 3:1-5? Do snakes have vocal cords? It is true that the serpent that Eve spoke with was possessed of the devil, but I won't rule out the possibility that Adam and Eve were able to telepathically communicate with animals.

#### Genesis 3:1-5

*<sup>1</sup>Now the serpent was more subtil than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden? <sup>2</sup>And the woman said unto the serpent, We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden: <sup>3</sup>But of the fruit of the tree which is in the midst of the garden, God hath said, Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die. <sup>4</sup>And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die: <sup>5</sup>For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil.*

Carrying the *human potential* theory of PSI further, after the fall in Genesis, the same as we see the life span of humanity decreasing from as high as about 1000 years, to the current average life span of the mid-seventies, the same degradation of humanities cognitive facilities have also degraded. (An interesting side note is to look at the fact that humans now only live about 10% of the life span they used to live shortly after the fall –

basically equal to the percentage of the brain capacity we use now. Is this an indication that all of humanities faculties have been degrading at about the same rate?)

So, as it currently stands, it may be that every now and then, an individual will have those certain areas of the brain operational that are responsible for PSI abilities, the same way every now and then someone will live to an astronomical age, like 120 years old.

## 5. PSI – conclusion:

In my opinion, the PSI phenomenon is probably a combination of all of the above aspects I have discussed. It starts with a small percentage of the population born with natural PSI abilities. Now what is to be done with these abilities? The answer to this question depends on if the individual belongs to Christ or not. Jesus mentioned in Matthew 11:16-20, and Mark 9:38-40 some advice that that might apply to people endowed with PSI abilities.

### Matthew 11:16-20

*<sup>16</sup>Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles? <sup>17</sup>Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit. <sup>18</sup>A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither can a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit. <sup>19</sup>Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire. <sup>20</sup>Wherefore by their fruits ye shall know them.*

### Mark 9:38-40

*<sup>38</sup>And John answered him, saying, Master, we saw one casting out devils in thy name, and he followeth not us: and we forbid him, because he followeth not us. <sup>39</sup>But Jesus said, **Forbid him not: for there is no man which shall do a miracle in my name, that can lightly speak evil of me.** <sup>40</sup>**For he that is not against us is on our part.***

If the person is not a born again Christian, he/she is not going to use his/her PSI abilities for the cause of Christ. Seeing the fruit of these individuals should reveal their alliance. Non-Christians with PSI abilities will be naturally bent against the things of God, because if one is not *for* Christ, one is *against* Him. Likewise, on the other side of the same coin, if someone is doing good works in the *name* of Christ, then that person *not against Christ*, but *on His side*. This would especially hold true if the individual performing the good works is a Christian.

## 5.1 The hidden dangers of PSI:

God never condemns PSI phenomenon in and of itself. What God condemns is the use of PSI abilities to serve any other purpose than that for which He has intended them to be used, which is always to serve Him. Sorcerers, diviners, enchanter, astrologers – (observers of the times), witches, charmers, mediums, necromancers, and wizards, are all activities, and titles that never did, nor ever will serve God. Furthermore, they always involve a great deal more, (*i.e., rituals, magic rites, the use of drugs, scrolls, etc.*), than simply an individual that is naturally imbued with a high degree of PSI.

Now that that's said – PSI does have a dark side. Consider the fact that there is no *direct* mention of PSI gifted people in scripture that aren't aided by either the Holy Spirit, or by demons. This to me is an indication that people naturally endowed with a high degree of PSI act as magnets – attracting demonic entities to them. Why might this



be? Think about it. People that have a high degree of PSI probably channel supernatural power better than those that don't. I can see certain benefits a demon might have in being able to display the bulk of its power through its host. Miraculous power has a way of gaining an audience. Once a demon can gain an audience, it can more efficiently sew seeds of deception. Because of all of the aforementioned, I have come to the conclusion that people naturally endowed with a high degree of PSI are more susceptible to demonic manipulation, and possession.

Since individuals possessing PSI abilities that aren't Christians are probably more susceptible to the vast amount of deception that exists within the spiritual realm, I believe that if a person is a psychic, but isn't a Christian, then it is highly probable that that person is demon possessed. Furthermore, the more prowess a particular psychic demonstrates, the more likely it is that that psychic is exhibiting supernatural power that is demonically charging their own natural PSI abilities. (I think this because human PSI is most likely not nearly as powerful when it operates on its own – because there is no direct mention of such in scripture.) *I realize some of this is conjecture.*

As for the Christian that finds him/herself in the possession of PSI abilities, he/she is in a unique situation. It is my firm belief that if a born again Christian has PSI abilities, it is because God has an intended service for that Christian that may require them. Furthermore, if said Christian diligently accepts the service that God has called him/her on, the Holy Spirit will probably bless these abilities, increasing said Christian's PSI abilities according to the needs of that Christian depending on the ministry he/she is called to.

For those individuals out there in the world that believe you possess powerful PSI abilities, I have the following suggestions:

4. Pray for Christ to save you, if you aren't already saved. If you are possessed by a devil that's giving you supernatural power, this is where it would end. Some of your natural PSI abilities might remain, though. This is where step 2 comes in.
5. To be thorough, ask Jesus to take away all of your PSI abilities if they are of a demonic nature.
6. If your PSI abilities don't go away after asking Jesus to take them away if they are demonic in nature, then ask the Lord Jesus to fully develop these PSI abilities within you to their fullest potential. If you have them, then use them for the Kingdom of God! And by all means, don't abuse them! Never charge fees, don't steal from people by using them to gamble, don't put in an application for a psychic hotline host, etc. Seek out godly counsel, read the word, and pray to the Lord for guidance; certainly He will guide you.

If after calling upon Christ and denouncing any satanic power you may feel that you have, you realize that you did in fact have demonic entities dwelling within you, I strongly suggest you quickly find a church, affiliate yourself with other Christians, and begin to fill your heart with the word of God. Scripture states that if you don't do this, those demonic entities will come back – with their friends – who will be even more wicked than they were!

## Matthew 12:43-45

<sup>43</sup> When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest, and findeth none. <sup>44</sup> Then he saith, I will return into my house from whence I came out; and when he is come, he findeth it empty, swept, and garnished. <sup>45</sup> Then goeth he, and taketh with himself seven other spirits more wicked than himself, and they enter in and dwell there: and the last state of that man is worse than the first. Even so shall it be also unto this wicked generation.

### 5.2 A unique ministry:

If you just became a Christian, or already are a Christian, and you have PSI abilities, then ask the Holy Spirit to fill your heart, and to help you use whatever natural PSI abilities you may have – to serve God. I have discovered during my time as a Christian that those individuals who were gifted with PSI abilities as non-Christians, when they became Christians, often experienced the continued use of their PSI abilities, but for the Kingdom of God. I would pray that such a blessing be that of every Christian blessed with PSI abilities.

Not too long ago, I saw a movie titled “Resurrection”, which is the true story of a woman who had an NDE.<sup>3</sup> After coming back from the brink of a terrible car accident, she was paralyzed from the waist down.

Not too long after she left the hospital, she discovered that she was endowed with the supernatural ability to heal people, among other PSI abilities discovered while being studied by scientists at a near-by university. She eventually healed her own paralysis, and began a sort of *healing* crusade of her own. Her story is somewhat tragic though. She lived in the central United States, in the midst of the Bible belt. Many Christians accused her of being a devil, because she refused to give God credit for her supernatural power. *(She honestly admitted that she simply didn’t know where her power came from.)* At the end of the movie, she was shot and nearly killed by her fanatical boyfriend, who thought she was the antichrist. From this point on, she apparently disappeared from public eye, moving far away from all who knew her. Keep in mind – this *is* a true story. It’s somewhat of an older movie, but should be found in any large video store.

I think if I had ten minutes to speak with this woman, I would’ve cleared up her confusion with a few simple scriptures, and a small prayer. It’s too bad that in the midst of the Bible belt, she never had any good guidance. My prognosis would be the following, which is fairly close to the advice I previously outlined:

7. Pray to God in Jesus’ name to take away all supernatural power if it isn’t from Him. If it doesn’t go away, then I’d venture to say that it’s probably from God; most likely it isn’t from the devil. *(This prayer should be conducted with other Christians – preferably the pastor of a church, or with church members ordained as elders, deacons, or those appointed to prayer teams.)*
8. Use this power as an incredible tool for evangelism. The power is present – but since this woman was weak in her faith, and not very knowledgeable about scripture, then...
9. Perhaps go to seminary. At least study the word, so that some doctrine can go along with the healing. This will make the healing complete, both physical, and spiritual. Imagine the ministry this woman could have. She could span

the globe in healing crusades, and play a wonderful part in the work of salvation the Lord allows his children the opportunity to have.

All throughout the movie, this woman struggled with the question about who or where the source of her power came from. She once explained to a crowd of people that she felt an overpowering sensation of love come over her, and this is when the healing power surged through her hands. To me, it's obvious where her power came from. She never used it for evil, never charged fees for her healing, and only spoke the truth. She simply didn't have any guidance. All it would've taken is for someone to sit down with her and pray. Perhaps if she ever reads this book – wherever she is – *who knows* – her world might open up with new meaning.

### References

1 Koestler Parapsychology Unit, *PSI Phenomena*, <http://moebius.psy.ed.ac.uk/psi.html>, Aug, 1999.

2 Rosemary Ellen Guiley, *Harper's Encyclopedia of Mystical & Paranormal Experience*, HarperSanFrancisco, San Francisco, 1991, page 468.

3 Daniel Petrie, *Resurrection*, 1980, 2 academy award nominations for best actress: *Ellen Burstyn*.

## CHAPTER 13: REINCARNATION IN THE BIBLE

### 1. Was John the Baptist, Elijah reincarnated?

Is information about reincarnation in the Bible? I used to believe that reincarnation was a real phenomenon the way it is traditionally believed. Then I came across Hebrews 9:27, which states the following:

Hebrews 9:27

*<sup>27</sup>And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment:*

Simple enough; men only die once, and that's that. Reincarnation as it is traditionally believed does not exist. The only investigation warranted in the study of cases purporting reincarnation should be conducted with the conclusion that reincarnation as it is traditionally believed is false. Other explanations for these odd cases should be the focus of further investigation.

There are passages of scripture that seem to indicate that there is such a thing as reincarnation – *but not as it is traditionally believed*, and there is only ONE case in existence. I will begin with Matthew 17:10-13.

Matthew 17:10-13

*<sup>10</sup>And his disciples asked Him, (Jesus), saying, Why then say the scribes that Elias must first come? <sup>11</sup>And Jesus answered and said unto them, Elias truly shall first come, and restore all things. <sup>12</sup>But I say unto you, That Elias is come already, and they knew him not, but have done unto him whatsoever they listed. Likewise shall also the Son of man suffer of them. <sup>13</sup>Then the disciples understood that he spake unto them of John the Baptist.*

While it can be noted that this passage of scripture suggests that John the Baptist is the prophet Elias reincarnated, or Elijah, – as he is called in the Old Testament – Jesus could be speaking symbolically. But that would mean that the prophet Malachi, and the apostle Luke were also speaking symbolically in Malachi 4:4, and Luke 1:17.

Malachi 4:4

*<sup>5</sup>Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the LORD: <sup>6</sup>And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.*

Luke 1:17

*<sup>17</sup>And he shall go before him in the spirit and power of Elias, to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the disobedient to the wisdom of the just; to make ready a people prepared for the Lord.*

Matthew 17:10-13, Luke 1:17, and Malachi 4:4 are all obviously pointing to the individual mentioned in the book of Isaiah.

Isaiah 40:1-3

*<sup>1</sup>Comfort ye, comfort ye my people, saith your God. <sup>2</sup>Speak ye comfortably to Jerusalem, and cry unto her, that her warfare is accomplished, that her iniquity is pardoned: for she hath received of the LORD'S hand double for all her sins. <sup>3</sup>The voice of him that crieth in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the LORD, make straight in the desert a highway for our God.*

John the Baptist appears to deny that he is Elias reincarnated, in John 1:19-23.

#### John 1:19-23

<sup>19</sup>And this is the record of John, when the Jews sent priests and Levites from Jerusalem to ask him, Who art thou? <sup>20</sup>And he confessed, and denied not; but confessed, I am not the Christ. <sup>21</sup>And they asked him, What then? Art thou Elias? And he saith, I am not. Art thou that prophet? And he answered, No. <sup>22</sup>Then said they unto him, Who art thou? that we may give an answer to them that sent us. What sayest thou of thyself? <sup>23</sup>He said, I am the voice of one crying in the wilderness, Make straight the way of the Lord, as said the prophet Esaias.

But is John really denying that he is Elias? Reading this, one could extrapolate that John *could* be denying that he is Elias, only because he is no longer *known* as Elias – he is John. What he does affirm is that he is the one spoken of in prophesy as “...the voice of one crying in the wilderness”. Malachi 4:4, Luke 1:17, and Matthew 17:10-13, combined with Isaiah 40:3, attribute the identity of “...the voice of one crying in the wilderness” with Elias, or Elijah. I find from this analysis that there appears to be more evidence in favor of John the Baptist being the prophet Elijah reincarnated, than that which would indicate otherwise.

The bottom line is that John the Baptist doesn't contradict Jesus, because he is the witness of Christ, not the contradictor. Furthermore, scripture never contradicts itself. When people perceive that it does, it is always the fault of their limited ability to perceive and conceive all that is written. An example of this derives from the fact that even if John the Baptist is the reincarnated Elijah, it still doesn't contradict Hebrews 9:27. On the surface, there seems to be a contradiction, but further analysis reveals that there isn't.

I won't state for sure one way or the other whether John the Baptist really was the reincarnated Elijah. The validity of Hebrews 9:27 remains intact either way though, because 2 Kings 2:11 states that Elijah never died.

#### Kings 2:11

<sup>11</sup>And it came to pass, as they still went on, and talked, that, behold, there appeared a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, and parted them both asunder; and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven.

Therefore it wouldn't be contrary to Hebrews 9:27 to say that John the Baptist is Elijah reincarnated, because Elijah never died. (Hebrews 9:27 only states that men are appointed to die only once – it never states that it's impossible for a man to be physically born more than once. Exactly how this might take place remains a mystery. If Elijah was John the Baptist, what happened to his original physical body? Was it placed in suspended animation in heaven, while his spirit was extracted from it and placed into a new physical body in Elizabeth's womb? Was Elijah's entry into a new physical body the stirring of the Holy Spirit in Elizabeth's womb, (John the Baptist's mother), spoken of in Luke 1:41-44? These are strange questions indeed, which I find interesting.)

#### Luke 1:41-44

<sup>41</sup>And it came to pass, that, when Elisabeth heard the salutation of Mary, the babe leaped in her womb; and Elisabeth was filled with the Holy Ghost: <sup>42</sup>And she spake out with a loud voice, and said, Blessed art thou among women, and blessed is the fruit of thy womb. <sup>43</sup>And whence is this to me, that the mother of my Lord should come to me? <sup>44</sup>For, lo, as soon as the voice of thy salutation sounded in mine ears, the babe leaped in my womb for joy.

With all of the above stated, John the Baptist is the only *possible* case of a valid reincarnation. The only other possible candidate for a future reincarnation would be Enoch, who was also taken up in a chariot of fire, and never saw physical death. (Then again, who's to say that Elijah wasn't Enoch as well?) As for Jesus the Christ – he won't reincarnate, because he already died once, and also because of what Acts 1:9-11 states.

#### Acts 1:9-11

<sup>9</sup>And when he had spoken these things, while they beheld, he was taken up; and a cloud received him out of their sight. <sup>10</sup>And while they looked stedfastly toward heaven as he went up, behold, two men stood by them in white apparel; <sup>11</sup>Which also said, Ye men of Galilee, why stand ye gazing up into heaven? this same Jesus, which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in like manner as ye have seen him go into heaven.

Reincarnation involves being physically born more than once – into a new physical body. When Jesus returns to this world, it won't be through rebirth, but through a divine decent.

Not to confuse the issue, but there does exist the possibility that the mysterious character Melchizedek, found in Genesis 14:18, and Hebrews 7:2, could have been the pre-incarnate Christ. But judging by Melchizedek's description in Hebrews 7:2, He isn't really one that can be considered as re-incarnated, because He was apparently never born. If He was the pre-incarnate Christ, He simply assumed the physical properties of a human, without the birth process. Here's the scriptures – you the reader can make up your own mind.

#### Genesis 14:18

<sup>18</sup>And Melchizedek king of Salem brought forth bread and wine: and he was the priest of the most high God. <sup>19</sup>And he blessed him, and said, Blessed be Abram of the most high God, possessor of heaven and earth: <sup>20</sup>And blessed be the most high God, which hath delivered thine enemies into thy hand. And he gave him tithes of all.

#### Hebrews 7:2

<sup>1</sup>For this Melchisedec, king of Salem, priest of the most high God, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings, and blessed him; <sup>2</sup>To whom also Abraham gave a tenth part of all; first being by interpretation King of righteousness, and after that also King of Salem, which is, King of peace; <sup>3</sup>Without father, without mother, without descent, having neither beginning of days, nor end of life; but made like unto the Son of God; abideth a priest continually.

## 2. Modern day cases of reincarnation:

There are many cases of people that can remember being someone else in a past life. Since reincarnation is a false doctrine, (*as it is traditionally believed*), according to Hebrews 9:27, there has to be another explanation for the many cases supporting information in favor of the existence of reincarnation.

Performing self-hypnosis in my days of New Age mysticism, I remembered many things that seemed to be memories of past lives, but they were false. I can say this with certainty because of Hebrews 9:27. I can also say with certainty that probably most of the cases of reincarnation with evidence retrieved from hypnotherapy are nothing more than hypnotic suggestion. Hypnosis is an induced state where people become highly susceptible to suggestion.<sup>1</sup> From what science has derived on cognitive theory, it is known that memory is re-constructive.<sup>2</sup> (This means that when the brain can't recall an

event of the past, or elements of a memory, it fills in the gaps by creating memories.) Putting these two facts together, it's not hard to conclude that hypnotherapy is not a reliable science. A great deal of paranormal research is derived from information retrieved from patients under hypnosis. Probably much of this information is false due to memory reconstruction using hypnotic suggestion. In some cases, the hypnotherapists are not even aware of the fact that they are making suggestions that are implanting false memories in their patient's minds.

There's more to say about reincarnation. Some patients can remember things, and they've never been under hypnosis. A particular case comes to my mind about a young boy from India by the name of Imad Elawar, who was able to recall numerous specific details about being someone else who lived in another city he had never been to.<sup>3</sup> His descriptions about places he'd been, things he used to do, people he knew, which were all verified, were too accurate to be attributed to chance. What can be said of this and other similar cases?

One possible explanation could be that the memories these people perceive are received through some form of psychic phenomenon, (*see thought-forms in chapter eight, and PSI in chapter twelve of this book*). Another explanation for reincarnation is spiritual possession either by demonic entities transmitting these memories, or by the disincarnate spirits of the deceased, (*which I cover in sections four and five of chapter seven of this book*). The second explanation is most likely the more prevalent possibility, simply because of what the doctrine of reincarnation purports. *Satan has a vested interest in the doctrine of reincarnation.*

### 3. The demonic deceptions explanation of reincarnation:

1 Peter 5:8

*<sup>8</sup>Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:*

1 Timothy 4:1

*<sup>1</sup>Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils;*

2 Corinthians 11:13-15

*<sup>13</sup>For such are false apostles, deceitful workers, transforming themselves into the apostles of Christ. <sup>14</sup>And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light. <sup>15</sup>Therefore it is no great thing if his ministers also be transformed as the ministers of righteousness; whose end shall be according to their works.*

These three passages of scripture explain that Satan and his demons are busily at work trying to deceive people into believing false doctrines. The doctrine of reincarnation is one of these false doctrines, because if people have the option to reincarnate, then they don't need Christ.

Reincarnation is found primarily in Islam, Hinduism, and Buddhism, though forms of it are spread all over the world in numerous cultures, and less known religions.<sup>4</sup> It purports the idea that nobody really goes to hell, but instead, people get reincarnated for continuous attempts to live life correctly so that the next reincarnation will be better. In short, reincarnation means two things: 1. People don't need God because they continue to live regardless of His existence, and the only sense of accountability people have is the mild repercussion of having to live a harder life next time if their current life

wasn't commendable. 2. It means that people will eventually be able to reach God according to their own good works.

From Romans 3:10-12, and Isaiah 53:6, scripture states that all people need God, and that it is impossible for people to ever reach God by their own good works. If it were possible to reach God's standard, certainly Christ would never have been crucified.

#### Romans 3:10-12

<sup>10</sup>*As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one: <sup>11</sup>There is none that understandeth, there is none that seeketh after God. <sup>12</sup>They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.*

#### Isaiah 53:6

<sup>6</sup>*All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on Him, (Jesus), the iniquity of us all.*

Because people are lost, and in desperate need of some way out of their dilemma, God has provided even his own Son to die in their place, as prophesied by Isaiah in the scripture shown above. Nothing short of the sacrificing of God the Father's very own Son would meet the payment of the world's sins. Because of this, God the Father will accept humanity by no other means than His Son's sacrifice. The scripture below exemplifies this fact; it divides Christianity from all of the other religions in the world.

#### John 14:6

<sup>6</sup>*Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.*

Furthermore, the fact that reincarnation alludes to the non-existence of hell smacks in the face of mountains of scripture that states otherwise. In fact, there is more scripture spoken by Jesus than any other individual in the entire Bible insisting that the existence of hell is a reality. (*A simple search in the Bible for the word "Hell" will quickly reveal this.*) Bear in mind that if hell is a reality, wouldn't God want us to know this more than anything? It makes perfect sense that Jesus spent a great deal of His ministry warning people about hell.

#### 4. The psychic phenomenon explanation of reincarnation:

The belief in reincarnation is highly beneficial to Satan and his minions. This supports the idea that cases regarding this phenomenon are primarily satanic, but I won't rule out other explanations entirely. The idea that people might receive what they perceive to be their own memories, but are really someone else's memories, through some form of PSI, may be a possibility.

Combining information from chapters eight, and twelve of this book, people might perceive thought-forms with PSI. If this is the case, thought-forms might have a way of integrating into one's subconscious, and be mistaken for memories of past lives. I realize there is currently no way of verifying this by using scripture; I simply think it's a possibility.

Also, as previously mentioned in this chapter and also in chapter seven of this book, someone possessed with the disincarnate spirit of another person might confuse this phenomenon with the doctrine of reincarnation. Of course, I'd classify possession by



the deceased as satanic, because all possession is against the will of God, other than being possessed by the Holy Spirit. It's just that being possessed by a deceased person is not a typical explanation for reincarnation. It is for this reason that I differentiate it from demonic possession.

## References

1 Patricia M. Wallace, Jeffrey H. Goldstein, & Peter E. Nathan, *Introduction to Psychology*, Wm. C. Brown Publishers, Dubuque, IA., 1990, pages 72, 82-86, and 203.

2 Ibid. (1), pages 191-192.

3 Collin Wilson & Dr. Christopher Evans, *The Book of Great Mysteries*, Dorset Press, New York, 1990, pages 271-280.

4 Rosemary Ellen Guiley, *Harper's Encyclopedia of Mystical & Paranormal Experience*, HarperSanFrancisco, San Francisco, 1991, pages 500-506.

## CHAPTER 14: EVOLUTION IN THE BIBLE

It may not seem logical to consider evolution a supernatural phenomenon, so it's inclusion in this book may appear debatable on the surface, because evolution is based upon the philosophy of naturalism. According to naturalism, nature is all there is, which rules out the *supernatural* entirely. But I don't think nature is all there is, and what I have to say about the theory of evolution concerns the topic of the origin of life, otherwise known as creation, which I consider to be a highly supernatural phenomenon. According to scripture, God is the originator of all life, and there is nothing more *SUPER*natural than He is!

### 1. The purpose of this chapter:

The purpose of this chapter is not to refute evolution. Others much more knowledgeable than I am about theology, biology, paleontology, archeology, geology, genetics, physics, astrophysics, probability statistics, astronomy, and a host of other fields of study have already done this for me. For a brief review of some of the many findings refuting evolution, I recommend a book titled *Why I Believe*, authored by Dr. D. James Kennedy, for starters.<sup>1</sup> For more in depth study, simply consult some of the references in the back of his book.

Instead of focusing on the farce of evolution, this chapter's purpose is aimed at answering some of the questions that evolutionists might ask, such as the following:

10. If God created all organisms of flesh, then why did He create the flesh so that it compels life forms to do sinful things? Relative to the laws of the flesh, why would God create the natural realm to incorporate natural selection through survival of the fittest? Isn't natural selection an uncaring, even ruthless system of law?
11. Why do life forms have seemingly useless portions of anatomy?
12. Why, if God created all life forms, did He make them all using the same blueprint – DNA? If each were hand crafted, why wouldn't they all be vastly different in atomic structure?
13. Why would God create such ravenous creatures in the prehistoric age? Why were prehistoric life forms so gigantic that they didn't have enough resources to survive? Isn't God a better ecologist than that?

### 2. Confusion in biology:

In answering the above questions, I will discuss a few of my theories, which are inspired from scripture. Among these theories are translation, the curse of survival, common design, and genetic manipulation.

#### 2.1 Translation vs. Evolution:

After the fall of Adam and Eve, can you recall how the earth and all creatures in it changed? Apparently there was no death in the world before the fall, because death came

into the world through sin, (Romans 5:12-14, 1 Corinthians 15:21-22).

Romans 5:12-14

<sup>12</sup>Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned: <sup>13</sup>(For until the law sin was in the world: but sin is not imputed when there is no law. <sup>14</sup>Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come.)

1 Corinthians 15:21-22

<sup>21</sup>For since by man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead. <sup>22</sup>For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.

This means that animals, as well as Adam and Eve, were immortal – so long as they ate from the tree of life – or some form of it. *(Recall that God's method of bringing Adam and Eve to the point of physical death was to restrict their access to the tree of life.)*

Since there was no death in the world, it logically follows that there was no killing. It was God who shed the first blood after the fall from glory, in order to provide warmth for Adam and Eve.

Genesis 3:21

<sup>21</sup>Unto Adam also and to his wife did the LORD God make coats of skins, and clothed them.

Since there was no death or killing before the fall, then there couldn't have been any carnivores. So, what exactly happened to everything? Did lions have sharp teeth before the fall of Adam and Eve? Most likely not; they wouldn't have been suitable for eating vegetation.

Does scripture mention anything as odd as a vegetarian lion? If you can remember back in chapter seven of this book, recall that the prophet Isaiah described a number of glorified animals that will dwell in the New Jerusalem. None of them are meat eaters.

Isaiah 11:6-9

<sup>6</sup>The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them. <sup>7</sup>And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox. <sup>8</sup>And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice' den. <sup>9</sup>They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea.

Isaiah 65:25

<sup>25</sup>The wolf and the lamb shall feed together, and the lion shall eat straw like the bullock: and dust shall be the serpent's meat. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all.

From the simple illustration of vegetarian lions, and the rest of the carnivores mentioned in Isaiah *that will no longer be carnivores*, it should be clear to see that God is in the business of altering life forms to suit their environments, and purposes. I call this alteration *Translation*, taken directly from scripture. A few examples of translation are referred to in scripture. While the two examples I'm quoting speak of humans being translated, the fact that there are glorified animals in heaven might indicate that animals, too, *(at least those that are chosen)*, will one day be translated.

## Colossians 1:12-13

<sup>12</sup>Giving thanks unto the Father, which hath made us meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light: <sup>13</sup>Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son:

## Hebrews 11:5

<sup>5</sup>By faith Enoch was translated that he should not see death; and was not found, because God had translated him: for before his translation he had this testimony, that he pleased God.

Translation can occur both ways – upward, or downward. Adam and Eve, as well as the rest of creation, were obviously translated downward into a lower level after the fall. As for an upward translation, something all Christians look forward to, this will occur during the end times, upon the return of Christ. There is muddled debate as to actually when this will occur during the end times – i.e. – before, during, or after the great tribulation, but at least it's commonly agreed that all Christians will, in fact, be translated into new, immortal bodies. This same translation will also effect animals, as evidenced by the vegetarian lions, among other altered carnivores, listed in the book of Isaiah.

Translation may indeed be part of what biologists are looking at in their analysis of the different species on earth. Genesis chapter two specifically states that all animals were created by God; He formed them up from the clay of the earth. But after the fall, it is clear that many of these life forms were dramatically altered. Most of these alterations were required in order for each life form to fight in order to survive.

## 2.2 The curse of survival:

Survival is part of the curse that has been placed upon the creation of earth and all its inhabitants. Humans are forced to work under the sweat of their brow in order to obtain food, either by farming the soil, livestock, or hunting and foraging. While scripture doesn't mention hunting and foraging specifically, these are obviously methods by which humans obtain food.

Because the curse changed all the creatures of the earth to mortal creatures, and food has become a scarce resource life forms have to compete for, survival has become the distinguished law of the flesh. All life must struggle, and compete to survive in all things, to include obtaining food, water, shelter, and to reproduce.

As spiritual beings, Christians must fight this natural urge that has been placed within them to preserve themselves. Self-sacrifice runs contrary to the nature of flesh, and the curse of survival is why. It is for this reason that the flesh is basically evil. Before the fall, man was innocent, and Eve most likely wouldn't have even considered eating the fruit from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil had Satan not tempted her.

It is true that Satan was capable of tempting her, even though she wasn't driven by a corrupted nature. What was it about the temptation that was so appealing, if she was pure, and innocent? I think the fact that she sinned can be attributed to the fact that she was a free moral agent, with an equal opportunity to choose to sin, or not to sin. Because the opportunity to sin was available, it was possible, and therefore was able to come to pass. As for the reason God chose to create free moral agents – that's simple. God wants

His children to *choose* to love Him genuinely, not as puppets, simply submitting to Him because they have no choice. This is an odd conclusion, because if you think about it, evil exists because the opportunity for it to be chosen has to exist in order for love to have true meaning.

In my opinion, before the fall, the compelling desire of the flesh to sin was basically non-existent, because the flesh was not corrupted at that time. Eve's sin was not a compelling drive *initiated* by the desires of her flesh; rather, it was *initiated* by the seductive deception of Satan himself. Taking all of this into consideration, the answer to the first question on my list of questions concerning odd things we see in nature can be satisfactorily answered. The flesh compels us to sin, because of the curse of survival that has been placed upon all fallen flesh.

Thank the Lord He makes a provision for his children concerning their sinful nature. Christians can be considered basically both good, and evil, because their bodies of flesh – which are corrupted and evil, house the Holy Spirit, who is pure good. For this reason, Christians are constantly fighting an internal battle, and in order to win, they must choose God's way out, and rely upon the promises of God that He will not let them be tempted beyond what they can bare.

1 Corinthians 10:13

*<sup>13</sup>There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man: but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it.*

### 2.2.1 God's provision for the curse of survival – physical changes:

After the fall, carnivores, otherwise known as predators, were given tools with which to catch their prey. As for the typical prey, these creatures were given defenses. All creatures have something they use to survive, be it claws, fangs, tusks, horns, antlers, scaly, thick, or hard skin, poisonous stinging abilities, or other special talents, such as flight, massive size and strength, speed, camouflage techniques, or whatever. Not all of these attributes were given after the fall. Flight, for example, existed in birds before the fall, because scripture states that God created birds in the beginning. But scorpions, on the other hand, were probably given their stingers after the fall – because there would be no purpose for them to sting anything *prior to* the fall. Lions, likewise, as well as other carnivores, were probably given sharp teeth, claws, etc., after the fall.

It can probably safely be assumed that the more harsh – attack and defense survival attributes seen in the animal kingdom today served no purpose in the creature's original habitation. These attributes, which God may have brought about some of them over time through *variation within a species* (NOTE: *Not one species becoming another species*) – and others through the transforming event of translation – are what scientists are misinterpreting as evolution from one species into another. (Actually, both translation and variation within a species may often be the same process – the element of time being the only factor that distinguishes them. I will elaborate on this momentarily).

Changes are marked within species' – and Darwin went one step further, and figured it wouldn't be too far fetched to say that if these changes were given enough time – say a few million years – that all life forms could've come from a single cell. It's easy to see his reasoning, but the effects of his theory have been highly detrimental. (*Hitler*,

*Mussolini, and Karl Marx were all profoundly effected by the doctrine of evolution, and incorporated it into their ideological paradigms).*<sup>2</sup>

### 2.2.2 Changes in humanity:

Most of the changes that occurred in species after the fall are evidenced in scripture by studying the changes that occurred in humanity. Humanity became mortal, and over a period of several generations, that mortality gradually decreased. I attribute this gradual loss in glory – defined as a translation to a lower state – to the generational curse God placed upon mankind, which had immediate and gradual effects. (*This is the element of time I previously alluded to.*) An immediate effect of translation after the fall was mortality. Spiritual death and genetic alterations resulting in eventual physical death occurred immediately after Adam and Eve sinned. The gradual effects were old age, diseases, pain in child bearing, etc., and eventually physical death. The changes in humanities DNA that make perfect DNA replication possible were obviously altered immediately, because science now knows that old age comes as a result of the death of our cells, because every time DNA replicates, it becomes shorter, and eventually results in the death of the cell. The changes in Adam and Eve's DNA weren't noticed until many years later, because they lived to be about 1000 years old. These changes were also programmed to have a degrading effect over generations, as I previously mentioned. Humanities average life span isn't even 10% what it once was.

Other changes in humanity *that will come* about after the *future upward translation* Christians look forward to may involve an alteration of humanities reproductive process. As stated in chapter four about the Sons of God, there is no marriage in heaven, and therefore no sex. (*I personally believe there will be something much better*). There may be a period of time in which humans retain their sexual anatomy, and it may even be functional – yet serve no reproductive purpose. Consider the fact that the angels that sinned were fully capable of sexual reproduction with humans, and that union resulted in offspring. It is true that the angels that sinned may have assumed some form capable of doing this, but I consider it also a possibility that these angelic beings were once like humans currently are, and sexually reproduced. God translated them into angels, but they blasphemed against the Holy Spirit by turning against God, and even their own glorified flesh, reverting to their lower fleshly, sinful activities.

After the fall of Adam and Eve, I consider it a strong possibility that humanity may have lost much more than a longer life span through the generations. What ever happened to the rest of the 90% of the brain capacity which is basically used for nothing? (*I alluded to this in the chapter on PSI*). Do we need that much spare gray matter? What about the bulk of human DNA – called *junk DNA*? Perhaps, at one time, humans used 100% of their brains, and had many more abilities programmed into their DNA than they currently have.

Does any of the aforementioned answer any of the questions asserted to explain the odd things we see in nature? What about question number two, concerning what is perceived as useless portions of anatomy? With all of the aforementioned, we can now have a basic scriptural understanding that explains anatomy the way a biologist might approve of.

We live in a cursed world, and now have variation within a species because of the need to survive. Since there is variation within a species, it becomes logical to assume that certain portions of anatomy become phased out, while others develop into place. During the phase out process, certain portions of anatomy may still exist for a time, yet serve no valuable purpose.

What other explanations can account for useless portions of anatomy? This question directly relates to question number three on my list, concerning why there are so many similarities between the biological systems of all life forms. Why is DNA basically composed of the same atomic structure in most all life forms? If each life form were hand crafted by God, wouldn't He make them each uniquely different in their basic structure? This leads me to my next theory about why God created the life forms of earth the way He did.

### 3. Common design – efficient, and intimate:

When a computer scientist creates a program and likes the results, does he build upon the same principals, or start from scratch all over again? Does a new computer language have to be created for every new program? Does a new operating system have to be created for every new application? THANK GOD NOT !!!

Being familiar with computers, it's easy for me to use the illustration of computer technology as a means of explaining the most effective, efficient method of creating a computing environment. Computers operate upon layers of technology. The analogy of computer technology is an excellent analogy, because in a way, computer technology to man, is what man is to God.

The first layer of computer technology is the machine layer, which consists of the hardware components of the computer. These hardware components are accessed using electronic signals consisting of negative and positive electrical charges.

The first computer based language was machine code, which is nothing but combinations of ones and zeros; ones represent the "on" state – a positive charge, and zeros represent the "off" state – a negative charge. After this, assembly language was created. The assembly language uses a program called a compiler; the compiler translates English-like statements into machine code. Using assembly language, programmers were able to effectively write programs without having to translate the meaning of all the one's and zero's of binary machine code.

After assembly language came other languages, all of which had compilers or translators, which also converted source files consisting of English-like statements into machine language. Each successive language following assembly language contained its own unique characteristics that the designers were desiring to have. Many programs have been written in all of these languages; it is estimated that there are over 400 computer languages in existence today.

In the early days of computers, (*not too long ago actually*), whenever a programmer wanted to write a program that accessed certain hardware, all of the routines for accessing this hardware were built into every program. Finally, someone decided it would be a great idea to write a program that would serve all the functions of accessing the hardware – so that the wheel wouldn't have to be reinvented with every program. This new program was called an *operating system*. Sitting on top of this operating



system are applications; applications are programs designed to perform certain functions, and pass off all the hardware access routines to the operating system.

Continuing the computer technology saga, newer computer languages began to incorporate elements called procedures, functions, sub routines, modules, and other technical terms, all basically meaning the same thing. Procedures and functions are constantly reused by programmers; if a programmer can help it, he/she takes a shortcut whenever possible. Almost all computer program languages today have function and procedure libraries.

Most companies employing in-house programmers have data-warehouses, which consist of portions of code that perform certain functions. Once created, programmers store this code in their company's data-warehouse, so that if they encounter a similar problem in the future, they don't have to re-write everything all over again. This is the next layer of complexity in programming, following those basic functions and procedures built into the computer languages themselves.

Following the implementation of operating systems was the advent of networking. Networking incorporates another layer of complexity; the *network operating system* was created to deal with it. Networks themselves have what is called the seven layered OSI model, in which all the complexities of networking may be broken down individually, and explained in detail.

The whole point of the computer illustration is to demonstrate the fact that God would've most likely followed a similar pattern during the creation of life on earth. The carbon molecule is similar to the negative and positive charges of an electronic signal in a computer. Built upon the complexity of the carbon molecule is the implementation of an amino acid, which when coupled with other amino acids in a highly complex order, forms what is known as DNA. Similarly, negative and positive electrical charges flow through the framework of computer chips, disks, and other magnetic and electronic media. When these electrical charges are activated together in complex combinations of instructions, they formulate programs, which perform certain functions. The master program upon which all programs reside is the operating system, which determines the input and output access of all the hardware upon a computer system.

DNA is the platform of life, which spawns many different life forms. A computer's operating system is the platform of the computer, which spawns many different types of programs. Life forms, and programs alike, have many similar components in their construction. Life forms have DNA, and other systems structure similarities, (i.e., skeletal system, cardiovascular system, nervous system, etc.) Programs also have similar structures, often utilizing the same functions and sub routines, accessing the same dynamic link libraries, written in the same programming languages, and using the same program language built-in functions, such as if/then conditional statements, while/do and for/do loops, operators, variables, and the like.

From this illustration, it should be clear that man, who is made in the image of God, has also begun his construction of life – though artificial – because it lacks the breath of life which comes only from God. This artificial silicon based life was created by man in the *same manner* that God created His true, sentient, carbon based life forms. This technique of creation can be summed up into two words: Common design.

Common design makes sense. The most effective, efficient method of creation is to start with a standard blueprint in which to implement designs. DNA is God's standard

blueprint for the carbon based life forms of earth. He may very well have other blueprints – but I seriously doubt that if there are other blueprints, He used them only for a single life form.

### 3.1 Intimacy:

There is another reason why common design makes sense; a reason that concerns the fact that God is love. This reason is *intimacy*. Why was Eve created from Adam's rib instead of the clay of the earth, like Adam was? Because God wanted her and Adam to be intimately intertwined with one another in a special way.

I think this aspect of intimacy could also be applied to the reason God chose to create the life forms of earth with his hands – using a common design, and molding them from the clay of the earth. While it is only my opinion, I think it was His way of making all the life forms of the earth intimate with both each other, and the environment from which they were created. They all come from the earth, and have a common framework from which they are all built upon.

So, jumping way back to the original questions that spawned all of this; again, why do we see life forms with useless portions of anatomy? For example, why do bats have eyes? Because they might have used them at one time, and were either translated or mutated (*variation within a species*) over time to not use them anymore, and they haven't physically disappeared yet. They may also have them in order to be intimately similar to so many other life forms on the earth that do have them.

Why do men have breasts with nipples, yet they don't give milk, and serve no valuable function? To be intimately similar to Eve. (*If you can think of any other reason, please let me know!*)

### 3.2 The unknown:

Finally, while it may appear to us that there are certain biological attributes life forms have that are seemingly useless, it may be that they do in fact serve a purpose that we simply have no idea about. This purpose might be working covertly, or may even be something that isn't activated yet, but will be in a future implementation.

Going back to the computer illustration, programmers often design portions of their programs so that the programs are flexible and allow for future growth and implementations. There are a multitude of examples of this in programming. Consider the fact that anti-virus software *must* be designed to accept constant updates, called signature definition files, in order to stay currently effective against the latest virus outbreaks. Viruses also, especially the type known as *Trojan Horses*, are specifically designed to activate upon certain dates, or when a certain combination of actions are performed on a given computer. Citing one more example, specialized database software is designed so that not only the contents of a database may be constantly added to, but the actual structure of the database may be altered as well, so that it may change over time, adjusting to a company's needs. While humans are the creators of these programs, it is easy for us to see these flexible components integrated in the programs we create. But from the perspective of man viewing God's creations, it isn't always that easy for us to see exactly why God designed biological life forms the way He did.

A biological example of retro-reactive, or hidden phenomenon I've been discussing can be found in the blood condition known as sickle-cell anemia. Sickle-cell anemia was once thought of as nothing but a crippling disease, but recently it was discovered that those who have the recessive gene for it, (*i.e., are heterozygous for the defective allele that causes sickle-cell anemia*), are immune to a certain strain of malaria. The geographical region where this strain of malaria runs rampant is also where sickle-cell anemia is most prominent.<sup>3</sup> I consider this coincidence to be no accident. Evolutionists think the continued existence of sickle-cell anemia is an example of natural selection; the disease continues because it actually has benefits if the recessive gene is carried. I would consider sickle-cell anemia God's way of bringing death to some, (*the curse of creation*), and protection from malaria for others, (*an example of His divine love, mercy, and ingenuity – that He would actually use elements of one disease to protect against another disease*).

There is much that is unknown about the life forms of earth. It may very well be that men have breasts with nipples, and bats have eyes, for reasons that would defy our imaginations! If those oddities seen in nature that are difficult to answer scripturally can't be answered with the theories of translation, the curse of survival, common design, or the next theory I'm about to espouse – genetic manipulation, I suppose they would naturally fall into the category of the unknown. Certainly God has His reasons for doing things the way He does them, and many of those reasons we may never know. But we should never shun scripture, and the account of creation as written in Genesis, simply because we can't answer all of the questions that frequent our minds when noticing oddities in nature.

#### 4. Genetic experimentation:

So far, I've given a few possible scriptural explanations that may give answers to three of the questions I previously presented. I would now like to point out one last observation I see in nature that may in fact be *unnatural*. This last observation will tackle the last question on my list, "Why would God create such large, ravenous creatures in the prehistoric age, that they couldn't be sustained by the resources in the earth? Why were so many prehistoric life forms so gigantic?"

Falling back to the profound scripture of Genesis chapter 6, I will now extrapolate an observation that may provide some answers concerning the monstrosities seen in the fossil record of earth's prehistoric age.

When referring to the giants that dominated the earth in the days of Noah, I mentioned in chapter four that I found it quite likely that this race of giants may have been genetically engineered by fallen angels. The purpose of this genetic engineering was to create a dominant race of humanoid entities that would be capable of conquering the earth.

When geneticists conduct genetic experiments, they always begin with simple life forms, mapping their DNA. This is the preferred method of gene mapping for many reasons. One reason is the fact that simple life forms are *simple* – du! They are easier to study and comprehend – and often enable scientists to isolate individual genes more quickly. Another reason is that simple, smaller life forms live shorter life spans. When manipulating particular genes, the results of that manipulation can be observed

throughout many generations much more quickly.

If the Sons of God were experimenting with genetics in order to alter their gene structure so that their offspring would be genetically superior, it makes sense that such genetic experimentation probably began with lower life forms. The logical pattern of genetic research is to begin with single celled life forms, (*prokaryotic cells*), extend to insects, then reptiles, and then finally mammals, (*eukaryotic cells*). Once the desired results are achieved with mammals, the Sons of God might have then subjected themselves to this genetic manipulation in order to mate, and produce offspring with humans. The resulting offspring would thus be designed to possess both superior angelic traits, i.e., supernatural power, as well as dominant biological traits, i.e., superior size, strength, and intelligence.

While all purely speculative, this theory explains why there were such exceptionally large life forms that frequented the prehistoric age. The fact that the offspring of the Sons of God were giants, and also many prehistoric life forms were colossal as well, can be viewed as either a coincidence, or a connected phenomenon. Evidence that this is a connected phenomenon is found in the flood of Noah. No giants survived the flood of Noah, and neither did any saber-toothed tigers, woolly mammoth's, tyrannosaurs rex, cave bears, and the like. God saved humanity, and all the animals, but not the giants, or ... perhaps other existing unnatural aberrations.

Exactly why did God destroy *all* flesh, anyway? Was it because of the corruption of *man* alone? What does Genesis 6:11 state?

Genesis 6:11

<sup>11</sup>The earth also was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled with violence. <sup>12</sup>And God looked upon the earth, and, behold, it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted his way upon the earth.

Exactly what life forms did God instruct Noah to collect into the ark?

Genesis 6:19-21

<sup>19</sup>And of every living thing of all flesh, two of every sort shalt thou bring into the ark, to keep them alive with thee; they shall be male and female. <sup>20</sup>Of fowls after their **kind**, and of cattle after their **kind**, of every creeping thing of the earth after his **kind**, two of every sort shall come unto thee, to keep them alive. <sup>21</sup>And take thou unto thee of all food that is eaten, and thou shalt gather it to thee; and it shall be for food for thee, and for them.

When analyzing the Greek translation of the word “Kind”, I find it interesting to note that this word is equivalent in meaning to the word “Species”. Here’s what Strong’s Enhanced Lexicon says about the word “Kind” as it is used in Genesis 6:19-21:<sup>4</sup>

### **miyn { meen }**

from an unused root meaning to portion out; TWOT – 1191a; n m

AV – kind 31; 31

GK – 4786 { @ymi }

1) kind, sometimes a species (usually of animals)

Groups of living organisms belong in the same created “kind” if they have descended from the same ancestral gene pool. This does not preclude new species because this represents a partitioning of the original gene pool. Information is lost or conserved not gained. A new species could arise when a population is isolated and inbreeding occurs.

By this definition a new species is not a new “kind” but a further partitioning of an existing “kind”.

When reading this information from Strong’s Enhanced Lexicon, I can’t help but notice the overtones of evolution. What does ...*if they have descended from the same ancestral gene pool*... mean? Anyway, I think what these statements are really referring to is variation within a species. In any case, if we can get past these evolutionary overtones, it can at least be ascertained that the word “Kind” refers to a particular species. The gist of what I’m driving at is the fact that scripture states that God wanted Noah to provide a place in the ark for every genuine species, not aberrations. Giants, as well as all other genetic anomalies that may have been produced as a result of genetic experimentation were specifically excluded from being saved from the flood.

If genetic experimentation was performed by the Sons of God, it could’ve served multiple purposes. First of all, it would’ve aided them in producing a superior race of humanoids, which I’ve already discussed. Secondly, it would’ve also brought about profound chaos upon the world even in the animal kingdom, which, if Genesis 6:11 is read carefully, this is exactly what happened. When analyzing the prehistoric fossil record, the capacity for violence among the massive carnivorous beasts of that time was extreme!

Genesis 6:11

<sup>11</sup>*The earth also was corrupt before God, and **the earth was filled with violence.*** <sup>12</sup>*And God looked upon the earth, and, behold, it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted his way upon the earth.*

Thirdly, this experimentation would’ve also created a diluted fossil record – initiating the deception of evolution even at this early stage in earth’s history. The other forms of man, for instance, such as the several extinct species of what evolutionists consider *pre-human*, (Ramapithecus, and Australopithecus), as well as the extinct members of the genus Homo, (Homo Habilis, Homo Erectus, and Neanderthals of Homo Sapiens),<sup>5</sup> might owe their brief existence on earth due to the genetic experimentation of fallen angels. The reason they no longer exist is because they were intentionally destroyed in the flood of Noah.

The theory of evolution seems to hold an advantage in the fossil record concerning humanities origin because there is proof of the existence of older, sub-human species that once existed. Christians often don’t have an explanation for these sub-human species. Furthermore, the fossils that should exist belonging to giants, as scripture states one time existed, seem to be absent. What can explain these discrepancies? As I have already explained, scripture doesn’t rule out the possibility that other species of humans may have existed before the flood of Noah. These species of humans were most likely genetic aberrations. Also, the archeology isn’t entirely devoid of evidence of giant humans. I won’t bother to recapitulate all of the data I have found regarding the existence of giants, other than to say that giant skeletons *are* reported to have been found, as well as giant human footprints next to dinosaur foot prints.<sup>6, 7, 8</sup> Consult the three references I have listed here for more information.

While I have not explained a great deal of information debunking evolution, I have provided some possible scriptural explanations for some of the biological phenomenon found in nature. Again, for more in depth information regarding the many

known problems with the theory of evolution, as well as a vast wealth of research supporting creationism, I personally recommend the works of Dr. D. James Kennedy, and those whom he recommends. It isn't my intent to echo his research, but rather to offer some scriptural explanations of my own to answer some biological questions that many have perhaps found it difficult to find answers to.

### 5. The great deception:

Today, I find that it takes more faith to be an orthodox evolutionist than it does to believe in the existence of a Creator. But even more than this, I can see the devastation that the teaching of evolution has brought to this world. As stated earlier, Adolph Hitler was dramatically influenced by the theory of evolution. He founded his entire dogma for the domination of a master race primarily from the doctrine of evolution. In my opinion, evolution may be the single most deceiving doctrine leading Christians astray than any other doctrine in the world, in the entire history of mankind.

Instead of giving to the poor, exterminate them; they are inferior. Instead of searching for the lost sheep, allow the predators to devour them; they shouldn't have left the fold. Those that survive will be the ones less likely to leave the fold. Instead of love and sacrifice; self-preservation. The heart of the doctrine of evolution is a doctrine of the laws of the flesh, which is everything for which Christ stood against.

But biologists aren't always particularly interested in philosophy or ethics. Some of them simply want to make sense out of all the pieces of the puzzle of biology. Evolution seems to be the best theory science has to offer for a unifying theory to explain the study of life, according to many biologists – though according to Dr. D. James Kennedy this number is vastly decreasing.

Science has demonstrated that there is definitely variation within a species. The theory of evolution, like many other theories, as well as belief systems, has a few fragments of truth. Variation within a species is a demonstrable fact. But adding to this the notion that this variation transforms one species – such as primates – into something radically different, i.e., humans, is where the lie comes in.

The greatest deceptions begin with 99% truth, or some equivalently high percentage, and toss in a single lie. Once people swallow this package, lies are slowly exchanged for truths. Over time, the percentage shifts so that the end result is 99% lies. The science of biology contains a great deal of factual information; even evolution itself contains elements of truth. Within nature, it is true that variation within a species may result from natural selection. Survival of the fittest guides the course of variation – BUT – to say that all the life forms of earth originated from a single cell, as a result of random chance, is contrary to scripture. And even more to the point, to say that there is no God guiding anything in creation, is to exclude all sense of moral accountability.

I once heard a commentator state that D. L. Moody said Satan hates the books of Genesis, and Revelation, more than any other books in scripture. The reason for this is because his sentence is pronounced in Genesis, and executed in Revelation. It is for this reason that these two books in particular have been under more attack than any other books in scripture, both by secularists – *and* Christians. Genesis is often considered a legend, and the book of Revelation, a myth.

The theory of evolution is nothing more than a great deception that attempts to

discredit the book of Genesis. In fact, the theory of evolution is most likely the *strong delusion* spoken of in 2 Thessalonians 2:9-13.

## 2 Thessalonians 2:9-13

<sup>9</sup>Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders, <sup>10</sup>And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. <sup>11</sup>And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie: <sup>12</sup>That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.

The reason I say this is because of its vast influence in the modern world. The deception of evolution is found in scientific dogma – which perpetuates agnosticism and atheism. It's also heavily rooted in Humanistic psychology, the New Age movement, and Scientology, which are religious in nature. It's true that some form of *god* is also embedded in these and other similar teachings – but this *god* is certainly not the God of scripture. (*I think we know who this little "g" god is...*)

These teachings that have built upon the theory of evolution simply slant the theory a little – transforming it more into the likeness of a typical religion. They do this by suggesting that evolution is fact, except that there may be some form of a *god* that originated life – but that *god* could be any number of possibilities. Aliens are one of those possibilities. Furthermore, these false teachings usually present their own methods of obtaining the status of a *god* – whether on the individual, or macro level – hence – *evolving* through human efforts. To suggest that man can evolve into something greater through his own effort is a great heresy, because if that were possible, Christ's blood would've been shed in vain. Humanity can never reach God without the work of Christ, because Christ said Himself in John 14:6, "I am the way, the truth, and the life. There is no way to the Father except by me." This leaves no room whatsoever for any other alternative.

Relevant to the primary thesis of this book, if alien visitors ever do unveil their existence to humanity, (*which I think will be very soon*), I won't be surprised at all if they build upon the deception of evolution, presenting themselves as the genetic forefathers of humanity. In this manner, the doctrine of evolution will come to fruition, fulfilling the ancient prophecy given in 2 Thessalonians 2:9-13.

## References

1 Dr. D. James Kennedy, *Why I Believe*, Word Books Publisher, Waco, TX., 1980, pages 50-59.

2 Ibid. (1), pages 50-59.

3 William K. Purves, Gordon H. Orians, H. Craig Heller, *Life: The Science of Biology*, Sinauer Associates, Inc., W. H. Freeman and Company, 1995, page 337.

4 *Enhanced Strong's Lexicon*, (Oak Harbor, WA: Logos Research Systems, Inc.) 1995.

5 Ibid. (3), pages 636-639.

6 (Tape Series: 2 tape set) Chuck Missler, *Return of the Nephilim*, 1997.

7 Dr. Carl Baugh, *Giant Humans and Dinosaurs*, <http://www.biblebelievers.org.au/giants.htm>.

8 Mike Weeks, *Giant Skeletons*,  
<http://www.geocities.com/TheTropics/Lagoon/1345/giants.html>



# A LAST WORD

## *The Grand Conclusion*

of the primary thesis of this book: *Aliens are found in the Bible.*

---

Now after reading this entire book, it should be evident that the two primary concepts defining exactly what differentiates aliens and other beings mentioned in scripture as separate entities should be basically eliminated. Angels, *(faithful and fallen)*, are not necessarily purely spiritual entities. Furthermore, heaven isn't necessarily a dimension separate from the cosmos. Seeing that heaven can be outer space, and that the Bible describes intelligent beings dwelling there in outer space – the conclusion that aliens are in fact found within the pages of scripture should be evident.

The Christian paradigm should now be expanded to include a host of possibilities that you, the reader, may have not previously considered. Because of these possibilities, the existence of many things currently encountered, *(such as the oddities in nature used to support evolution, and refute Christianity)*, and things that may be encountered in the future, *(such as alien contact)*, should not pose any intellectual threat to the Christian paradigm. The Bible is an all encompassing text; its truth expands the full scope of all reality.

Aside from the primary thesis of this book, *(aliens are found in the Bible)*, which is vastly more important than the other information contained herein because of its prophetic significance, I've also supplied other information concerning other metaphysical phenomenon. I hope it was all worth reading.

Without a doubt, if your home is haunted by a deceased cat, which is plagued by thought-forms generated by psychic attacks originating from astrally projected, demon possessed, cybernetically enhanced, half-breed giants – spawn from fallen angels reproducing with aliens from other planets, then you should be able to define just exactly what's going on. Just kidding –

God bless... ;-)